《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书

新概念英语 1

NCE Grammar Practice

语法练习

First Things First

英语初阶

主编：何其莘

顾问：Roy Kingsbury （英）

Julia Alexander （英）

编著：常晓梅

外语教学与研究出版社

FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

新概念英语 1

语法练习

《新概念英语》是一套风靡全球的经典英语教程，自1967年首次出版以来，受到了世界各地英语学习者的青睐，也在中国的英语学习者中赢得了无可比拟的盛誉。外语教学与研究出版社于1997年推出的《新概念英语》（新版）教程是由该书作者亲自修订的唯一新版，更加注重对学生英语听、说、读、写四项基本技能的培养，更加符合中国英语学习者的特点和学习习惯。

这套《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书由原中方编著者**何其莘**教授亲自主持编写，原英方编著者**L. G. Alexander**的夫人**Julia Alexander**及其长期合作者**Roy Kingsbury**亲自审订，是为中国广大英语爱好者度身定做的一套配套辅导用书。它切合中国广大读者的学习实际，为学好《新概念英语》（新版）提供了全方位、多层次的解决方案，不仅能使英语爱好者在学习过程中最大限度地发挥自己的潜能，也能使他们从《新概念英语》（新版）中得到更多的收获。

责任编辑：徐　嫚
封面设计：张　媛

¥：23.90
ISBN 7-5600-3304-0
9 787560 033044 >

外研社

一个学术性教育性
出版机构

网址：http://www.fltrp.com

Longman朗文

《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书

新概念英语 1

NCE Grammar Practice 1

语法练习

H31
109=3C1
:1(1)
2004

First Things First
英语初阶

主编：何其莘
顾问：Roy Kingsbury （英）
Julia Alexander（英）

编著：常晓梅

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS
北京 BEIJING

京权图字 01－2004－3430

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

新概念英语语法练习 1 / 何其莘主编;常晓梅编著 .— 北京: 外语教学与研究出版社, 2003
(《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书)
ISBN 7－5600－3304－0

Ⅰ. 新… Ⅱ. ①何… ②常… Ⅲ. 英语—语法—习题 Ⅳ. H314－44

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2003)第 010767 号

出 版 人: 李朋义
责任编辑: 徐 嫿
出版发行: 外语教学与研究出版社
社 址: 北京市西三环北路 19 号 (100089)
网 址: http: //www. fltrp. com
印 刷: 北京京科印刷有限公司
开 本: 850×1168 1/32
印 张: 18.25
版 次: 2004 年 7 月第 1 版 2006 年 10 月第 3 次印刷
书 号: ISBN 7－5600－3304－0
定 价: 23.90 元

* * *

如有印刷、装订质量问题出版社负责调换
制售盗版必究 举报查实奖励
版权保护办公室举报电话: (010)88817519

前　言

根据广大读者——特别是英语自学者——的要求，外语教学与研究出版社和朗文（Longman）公司共同推出了一批《新概念英语》（新版）的辅导用书，涵盖了自学导读、练习详解、词汇总表、语法及录音练习等方面的内容。第一批辅导用书出版后受到了广大读者的欢迎。

此次推出的第二批辅导用书包括：词汇随身听速记手册、口语练习、语法练习和词汇练习。

我们相信，这套新的辅导用书将为各个层次的学习者提供多方位的帮助，有助于他们通过学习《新概念英语》（新版）提高自己的英语综合运用能力。

何其莘

《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书包括：

《新概念英语自学导读 1》
（*NCE Study Guide 1：First Things First*）
《新概念英语自学导读 2》
（*NCE Study Guide 2：Practice & Progress*）
《新概念英语自学导读 3》
（*NCE Study Guide 3：Developing Skills*）
《新概念英语自学导读 4》
（*NCE Study Guide 4：Fluency in English*）

《新概念英语练习详解 1》
（*NCE Exercise Companion 1：First Things First*）
《新概念英语练习详解 2》
（*NCE Exercise Companion 2：Practice & Progress*）
《新概念英语练习详解 3》
（*NCE Exercise Companion 3：Developing Skills*）
《新概念英语练习详解 4》
（*NCE Exercise Companion 4：Fluency in English*）

《新概念英语语法手册》（*An NCE Grammar Handbook*）
《新概念英语词汇大全》（*An NCE Complete Vocabulary List*）
《新概念英语词汇自学手册》（*An NCE Pocket Dictionary*）
《新概念英语录音练习手册》（*Recorded Drills for NCE*）

《新概念英语词汇随身听速记手册 1》
（*NCE Listening Vocabulary Companion 1*）
《新概念英语词汇随身听速记手册 2》
（*NCE Listening Vocabulary Companion 2*）

《新概念英语词汇随身听速记手册 3》
(*NCE Listening Vocabulary Companion 3*)
《新概念英语词汇随身听速记手册 4》
(*NCE Listening Vocabulary Companion 4*)

《新概念英语口语练习 1》
(*NCE Conversation Practice 1*)
《新概念英语口语练习 2》
(*NCE Conversation Practice 2*)
《新概念英语口语练习 3》
(*NCE Conversation Practice 3*)
《新概念英语口语练习 4》
(*NCE Conversation Practice 4*)

《新概念英语语法练习 1》
(*NCE Grammar Practice 1*)
《新概念英语语法练习 2》
(*NCE Grammar Practice 2*)
《新概念英语语法练习 3》
(*NCE Grammar Practice 3*)
《新概念英语语法练习 4》
(*NCE Grammar Practice 4*)

《新概念英语词汇练习 1》
(*NCE Vocabulary Practice 1*)
《新概念英语词汇练习 2》
(*NCE Vocabulary Practice 2*)
《新概念英语词汇练习 3》
(*NCE Vocabulary Practice 3*)
《新概念英语词汇练习 4》
(*NCE Vocabulary Practice 4*)

目　　录

Lesson 1　Excuse me! 对不起！ …… (1)
Lesson 2　Is this your . . . ? 这是你的……吗？ …… (3)
Lesson 3　Sorry, sir. 对不起，先生。 …… (5)
Lesson 4　Is this your . . . ? 这是你的……吗？ …… (8)
Lesson 5　Nice to meet you. 很高兴见到你。 …… (10)
Lesson 6　What make is it? 它是什么牌子的？ …… (14)
Lesson 7　Are you a teacher? 你是教师吗？ …… (16)
Lesson 8　What's your job? 你是做什么工作的？ …… (20)
Lesson 9　How are you today? 你今天好吗？ …… (23)
Lesson 10　Look at . . . 看…… …… (26)
Lesson 11　Is this your shirt? 这是你的衬衫吗？ …… (28)
Lesson 12　Whose is this . . . ? This is my/your/his/her . . .
这……是谁的？这是我的/你的/他的/她的……
Whose is that . . . ? That is my/your/his/her . . .
那……是谁的？那是我的/你的/他的/她的……
…… (31)
Lesson 13　A new dress 一件新连衣裙 …… (33)
Lesson 14　What colour's your . . . ?
你的……是什么颜色的？ …… (35)
Lesson 15　Your passports, please.
请出示你们的护照。 …… (38)
Lesson 16　Are you . . . ? 你是……吗？ …… (41)
Lesson 17　How do you do? 你好！ …… (44)

Lesson 18 What are their jobs?
他们是做什么工作的？ …… (47)
Lesson 19 Tired and thirsty 又累又渴 …… (50)
Lesson 20 Look at them! 看看他/它们！ …… (53)
Lesson 21 Which book? 哪一本书？ …… (55)
Lesson 22 Give me/him/her/us/them a . . . Which one?
给我/他/她/我们/他们一…… 哪一……？ … (57)
Lesson 23 Which glasses? 哪几只杯子？ …… (60)
Lesson 24 Give me/him/her/us/them some . . .
给我/他/她/我们/他们一些……
Which ones? 哪些？ …… (64)
Lesson 25 Mrs. Smith's kitchen 史密斯太太的厨房 … (67)
Lesson 26 Where is it? 它在哪里？ …… (70)
Lesson 27 Mrs. Smith's living room
史密斯太太的客厅 …… (73)
Lesson 28 Where are they? 它们在哪里？ …… (77)
Lesson 29 Come in, Amy. 进来，艾米。 …… (80)
Lesson 30 What must I do? 我应该做什么？ …… (83)
Lesson 31 Where's Sally? 萨莉在哪里？ …… (85)
Lesson 32 What's he/she/it doing?
他/她/它正在做什么？ …… (88)
Lesson 33 A fine day 晴天 …… (91)
Lesson 34 What are they doing? 他们在做什么？ …… (93)
Lesson 35 Our village 我们的村庄 …… (95)
Lesson 36 Where . . . ? ……在哪里？ …… (98)
Lesson 37 Making a bookcase 做书架 …… (100)
Lesson 38 What are you going to do? 你准备做什么？
What are you doing now?
你现在正在做什么？ …… (103)

Lesson 39 Don't drop it! 别摔了！ …… (106)
Lesson 40 What are you going to do? 你准备做什么？
I'm going to . . . 我准备…… …… (110)
Lesson 41 Penny's bag 彭尼的提包 …… (114)
Lesson 42 Is there a . . . in/on that . . . ?
在那个……中/上有一个……吗？
Is there any . . . in/on that . . . ?
在那个……中/上有……吗？ …… (117)
Lesson 43 Hurry up! 快点！ …… (119)
Lesson 44 Are there any . . . ? 有些……吗？
Is there any . . . ? 有些……吗？ …… (123)
Lesson 45 The boss's letter 老板的信 …… (126)
Lesson 46 Can you . . . ? 你能……吗？ …… (129)
Lesson 47 A cup of coffee 一杯咖啡 …… (131)
Lesson 48 Do you like . . . ? 你喜欢……吗？
Do you want . . . ? 你想要……吗？ …… (134)
Lesson 49 At the butcher's 在肉店 …… (136)
Lesson 50 He likes . . . 他喜欢……
But he doesn't like . . .
但是他不喜欢…… …… (139)
Lesson 51 A pleasant climate 宜人的气候 …… (142)
Lesson 52 What nationality are they? 他们是哪国人？
Where do they come from?
他们来自哪个国家？ …… (145)
Lesson 53 An interesting climate 有趣的气候 …… (148)
Lesson 54 What nationality are they? 他们是哪国人？
Where do they come from?
他们来自哪个国家？ …… (151)
Lesson 55 The Sawyer family 索耶一家人 …… (154)

Lesson 56 What do they usually do?
他们通常做什么？ …… (157)
Lesson 57 An unusual day 很不平常的一天 …… (159)
Lesson 58 What's the time? 几点钟？ …… (162)
Lesson 59 Is that all? 就这些吗？ …… (166)
Lesson 60 What's the time? 几点钟？ …… (169)
Lesson 61 A bad cold 重感冒 …… (172)
Lesson 62 What's the matter with them? 他们怎么啦？
What must they do? 他们该怎么办？ …… (176)
Lesson 63 Thank you, doctor. 谢谢你，医生。 …… (179)
Lesson 64 Don't . . . ! 不要……！
You mustn't . . . ! 你不应该……！ …… (182)
Lesson 65 Not a baby 不是一个孩子 …… (184)
Lesson 66 What's the time? 几点钟？ …… (187)
Lesson 67 The weekend 周末 …… (189)
Lesson 68 What's the time? 几点钟？ …… (193)
Lesson 69 The car race 汽车比赛 …… (195)
Lesson 70 When were they there?
他们是什么时候在那里的？ …… (199)
Lesson 71 He's awful! 他讨厌透了！ …… (202)
Lesson 72 When did you . . . ? 你什么时候……？ …… (205)
Lesson 73 The way to King Street 到国王街的走法 …… (208)
Lesson 74 What did they do? 他们干了什么？ …… (212)
Lesson 75 Uncomfortable shoes 不舒适的鞋子 …… (214)
Lesson 76 When did you . . . ? 你什么时候……？ …… (218)
Lesson 77 Terrible toothache 要命的牙痛 …… (220)
Lesson 78 When did you . . . ? 你什么时候……？ …… (223)
Lesson 79 Carol's shopping list 卡罗尔的购物单…… (225)
Lesson 80 I must go to the . . . 我必须去…… …… (229)

Lesson 81 Roast beef and potatoes 烤牛肉和土豆 …… (231)
Lesson 82 I had . . . 我吃(喝、从事)了…… …… (234)
Lesson 83 Going on holiday 度假 …… (236)
Lesson 84 Have you had . . . ? 你已经……了吗? … (240)
Lesson 85 Paris in the spring 巴黎之春 …… (243)
Lesson 86 What have you done? 你已经做了什么? … (246)
Lesson 87 A car crash 车祸 …… (248)
Lesson 88 Have you . . . yet? 你已经……了吗? …… (253)
Lesson 89 For sale 待售 …… (255)
Lesson 90 Have you . . . yet? 你已经……了吗? …… (258)
Lesson 91 Poor Ian! 可怜的伊恩! …… (260)
Lesson 92 When will . . . ? 什么时候要……? …… (263)
Lesson 93 Our new neighbour 我们的新邻居 …… (266)
Lesson 94 When did you/will you go to . . . ?
你过去/将在什么时候去……? …… (269)
Lesson 95 Tickets, please. 请把车票拿出来。…… (272)
Lesson 96 What's the exact time?
确切的时间是几点? …… (275)
Lesson 97 A small blue case 一只蓝色的小箱子 …… (278)
Lesson 98 Whose is it? 它是谁的?
Whose are they? 它们是谁的? …… (282)
Lesson 99 Ow! 啊哟! …… (285)
Lesson 100 He says that . . . She says that . . . They say
that . . . 他/她/他们说…… …… (288)
Lesson 101 A card from Jimmy 吉米的明信片 …… (290)
Lesson 102 He says he . . . She says she . . . They say they . . .
他/她/他们说他/她/他们…… …… (293)
Lesson 103 The French test 法语考试 …… (296)
Lesson 104 Too, very, enough 太、非常、足够 …… (300)

Lesson 105 Full of mistakes 错误百出 …… (303)
Lesson 106 I want you/him/her/them to . . .
我要你/他/她/她们……
Tell him/her/them to . . .
告诉他/她/他们…… …… (306)
Lesson 107 It's too small. 太小了。 …… (309)
Lesson 108 How do they compare?
它们的比较级和最高级是什么? …… (312)
Lesson 109 A good idea 好主意 …… (314)
Lesson 110 How do they compare?
它们的比较级和最高级是什么? …… (318)
Lesson 111 The most expensive model
最昂贵的型号 …… (321)
Lesson 112 How do they compare?
它们的比较级和最高级是什么? …… (325)
Lesson 113 Small change 零钱 …… (328)
Lesson 114 I've got none. 我没有。 …… (332)
Lesson 115 Knock, knock! 敲敲门! …… (335)
Lesson 116 Every, no, any and some
每一、无、若干和一些 …… (340)
Lesson 117 Tommy's breakfast 汤米的早餐 …… (344)
Lesson 118 What were you doing?
你那时正在做什么? …… (347)
Lesson 119 A true story 一个真实的故事 …… (350)
Lesson 120 It had already happened.
它已经发生了。 …… (353)
Lesson 121 The man in a hat 戴帽子的男士 …… (355)
Lesson 122 Who (whom), which and that
关系代词 …… (358)

Lesson 123 A trip to Australia 澳大利亚之行 …… (361)
Lesson 124 (who)/(whom), (which) and (that)
关系代词 …… (363)
Lesson 125 Tea for two 两个人一起喝茶 …… (366)
Lesson 126 Have to and do not need to
不得不和不必要 …… (369)
Lesson 127 A famous actress 著名的女演员 …… (372)
Lesson 128 He can't be . . . 他不可能……
He must be . . . 他肯定是…… …… (376)
Lesson 129 Seventy miles an hour 时速 70 英里 …… (379)
Lesson 130 He can't have been . . . 他那时不可能……
He must have been . . .
他那时肯定是…… …… (382)
Lesson 131 Don't be so sure! 别那么肯定! …… (385)
Lesson 132 He may be . . . 他可能是……
He may have been . . .他可能已经……
I'm not sure. 我不敢肯定。 …… (388)
Lesson 133 Sensational news! 爆炸性新闻! …… (390)
Lesson 134 He said (that) he . . . 他曾说他……
He told me (that) he . . .
他曾告诉我说他…… …… (393)
Lesson 135 The latest report 最新消息 …… (396)
Lesson 136 He said (that) he . . . 他(曾)说他……
He told me (that) he . . .
他(曾)告诉我说他…… …… (399)
Lesson 137 A pleasant dream 美好的梦 …… (401)
Lesson 138 If . . . 如果…… …… (405)
Lesson 139 Is that you, John? 是你吗, 约翰? …… (407)

Lesson 140 He wants to know if/why/what/when
他想知道是否/为什么/什么/什么时候 … (411)
Lesson 141 Sally's first train ride
萨莉第一次乘火车旅行 …… (414)
Lesson 142 Someone invited Sally to a party.
有人邀请萨莉出席一个聚会。
Sally was invited to a party.
萨莉应邀出席一个聚会。 …… (417)
Lesson 143 A walk through the woods 林中散步 …… (419)
Lesson 144 He hasn't been served yet. 还没有人来侍候他。
He will be served soon.
很快会有人来侍候他的。 …… (422)
Key to the exercises 练习答案 …… (424)

Lesson 1 Excuse me!

对不起！

I. Practise "My name is ..." according to the example. 仿照例句练习说"我叫……"。

1. A: What's your name? (Ken Baker)
   B: *My name is Ken Baker.*
2. A: What's your name? (Ann Scott)
   B: _____
3. A: What's your name? (Kathy Baker)
   B: _____
4. A: What's your name? (Tom Smith)
   B: _____
5. A: What's your name? (Sam Scott)
   B: _____
6. A: What's your name? (Fred Johnson)
   B: _____

II. Use the words in the box to complete the dialogues. 用所给的词完成下列对话。

pen	pencil	book	coat	shirt	picture
dress	house	chair	map	watch	class

1. A: Excuse me. Is this your *pen*? B: Yes, it is.
2. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
3. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
4. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.

5. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
6. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
7. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
8. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
9. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
10. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
11. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.
12. A: Excuse me. Is this your _____? B: Yes, it is.

III. Change the statements to questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列肯定句改为疑问句。

1. This is your book. *Is this your book?*
2. This is your chair. _____
3. This is your skirt. _____
4. This is your car. _____
5. This is your handbag. _____
6. This is your house. _____
7. This is your pencil. _____
8. This is your watch. _____
9. This is your shirt. _____
10. This is your coat. _____
11. This is your pen. _____
12. This is your dress. _____

Lesson 2 Is this your . . . ?

这是你的……吗？

I. Ask questions, using the words given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问。

1. this/your/is/classroom *Is this your classroom?*
2. your/book/is/this _____
3. is/this/shirt/your _____
4. your/house/this/is _____
5. this/is/your/pen _____
6. is/this/your/handbag _____
7. picture/is/your/this _____
8. watch/this/is/your _____
9. this/pencil/your/is _____
10. your/this/is/coat _____

II. Ask questions, using the words given and answer them with "Yes, it is." according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问，并做简短的肯定回答。

1. car *Is this your car?* *Yes, it is.*
2. house _____ _____
3. classroom _____ _____
4. skirt _____ _____
5. dress _____ _____
6. chair _____ _____

7. handbag _____

8. coat _____

9. bag _____

10. watch _____

11. shirt _____

12. pen _____

13. book _____

14. pencil _____

Lesson 3 Sorry, sir.

对不起，先生。

I. Rewrite the sentences with short forms according to the example. 仿照例句用缩写形式重写下列各句。

1. It is a school. *It's a school.*
2. It is my book. _____
3. Here is my watch. _____
4. It is not my pen. _____
5. Here is your ticket. _____
6. This is not my suit. _____
7. It is your umbrella. _____
8. This is not my teacher. _____
9. It is my house. _____
10. It is not my shirt. _____

II. Change the sentences into negative forms, and then rewrite them in short forms according to the example. 仿照例句将下列句子改为否定句，再用缩写形式重写一遍。

1. This is my teacher.
   This is not my teacher. /This isn't my teacher.
2. This is my umbrella.
   _____
3. It is your ticket.
   _____

4. This is your suit.

_____

5. It is my handbag.

_____

6. It is your car.

_____

7. This is my son.

_____

8. This is my daughter.

_____

9. It is my school.

_____

10. It is your dress.

_____

III. Give short answers to the questions with "Yes, it is." Then write a complete statement according to the examples. 仿照例句用肯定形式回答下列问题，然后再写出完整的句子。

1. Is this your handbag? *Yes, it is. It's my handbag.*
2. Is this my ticket? *Yes, it is. It's your ticket.*
3. Is this my shirt? _____
4. Is this your house? _____
5. Is this your suit? _____
6. Is this my watch? _____
7. Is this your pen? _____
8. Is this my dress? _____
9. Is this your class? _____
10. Is this my chair? _____
11. Is this your pencil? _____
12. Is this my book? _____

IV. Give short answers to the questions with "No, it isn't." Then make statements according to the examples. 用否定形式回答下列问题，然后仿照例句造句。

1. Is this your umbrella?

   No, it isn't. It isn't my umbrella. It's your umbrella.

2. Is this my skirt?

   No, it isn't. It isn't your skirt. It's my skirt.

3. Is this your ticket?

   _____

4. Is this my suit?

   _____

5. Is this my pencil?

   _____

6. Is this my book?

   _____

7. Is this your handbag?

   _____

8. Is this your coat?

   _____

9. Is this your watch?

   _____

10. Is this my pen?

    _____

11. Is this my dress?

    _____

12. Is this your house?

    _____

Lesson 4 Is this your . . . ?

这是你的……吗？

I. Complete the short answers to the questions according to the example. 仿照例句完成对下列问题的回答。

1. Is this your book? Yes, *it is*.
   Is this my book? No, *it isn't*.
2. Is this your pencil? Yes, _____.
   Is this my pencil? No, _____.
3. Is this your ticket? No, _____.
   Is this my ticket? Yes, _____.
4. Is this your suit? Yes, _____.
   Is this my suit? No, _____.
5. Is this your handbag? Yes, _____.
   Is this my handbag? No, _____.
6. Is this your picture? No, _____.
   Is this my picture? Yes, _____.
7. Is this your umbrella? Yes, _____.
   Is this my umbrella? No, _____.
8. Is this your house? Yes, _____.
   Is this my house? No, _____.
9. Is this your coat? No, _____.
   Is this my coat? Yes, _____.
10. Is this your classroom? Yes, _____.
    Is this my classroom? No, _____.

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is this my umbrella or your umbrella? (your umbrella)
   It isn't my umbrella. It's your umbrella.
2. Is this my classroom or your classroom? (my classroom)
   It isn't your classroom. It's my classroom.
3. Is this my suit or your suit? (my suit)

   _____
4. Is this my watch or your watch? (your watch)

   _____
5. Is this my ticket or your ticket? (my ticket)

   _____
6. Is this my handbag or your handbag? (my handbag)

   _____
7. Is this my coat or your coat? (your coat)

   _____
8. Is this my book or your book? (my book)

   _____
9. Is this my pen or your pen? (your pen)

   _____
10. Is this my pencil or your pencil? (your pencil)

    _____

Lesson 5 Nice to meet you.

很高兴见到你。

I. Add "a" or "an" to these words. 在下列单词前加上 a 或 an。

1. ____ car
2. ____ teacher
3. ____ umbrella
4. ____ school
5. ____ house
6. ____ suit
7. ____ university
8. ____ American car
9. ____ morning
10. ____ Italian house
11. ____ student
12. ____ pencil
13. ____ English teacher
14. ____ shirt
15. ____ watch

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is Alice a new student? (yes)
   Yes, she is.
   Is she Japanese? (American)
   No, she isn't. She is American.
2. Is Anna a new teacher? (yes)
   _____
   Is she Italian? (English)
   _____
3. Is Hans an old teacher? (yes)
   _____
   Is he French? (German)
   _____

4. Is Kawabata a nice man? (yes)

_____

Is he Korean? (Japanese)

_____

5. Is Sophia a good teacher? (yes)

_____

Is she American? (Italian)

_____

6. Is Li Fang a student? (yes)

_____

Is she Japanese? (Chinese)

_____

7. Is Bob a new student? (yes)

_____

Is he German? (French)

_____

8. Is Chang-woo a good student? (yes)

_____

Is he Chinese? (Korean)

_____

9. Is Harold a new student? (yes)

_____

Is he Swedish? (English)

_____

10. Is Linda a nice girl? (yes)

_____

Is she English? (American)

_____

III. Choose and write the correct questions for the answers according to the examples. 仿照例句根据答案选择并写出相缨的疑问句。

What nationality is . . . ?
What's his/her name?
What make is your car?

1. *What nationality is Sophie?*
   Sophie is French.
2. *What's his name?*
   His name is Michael.
3. *What make is your car?*
   It's a Volvo.
4. _____
   It's a Toyota.
5. _____
   William is English.
6. _____
   Zhang Wei is Chinese.
7. _____
   Her name is Naoko.
8. _____
   Naoko is Japanese.
9. _____
   It's a Ford.
10. _____
    Ann is English.
11. _____
    Hans is German.

12. _____

Her name is Mary.

13. _____

Ruth is American.

14. _____

It's a Daewoo.

15. _____

His name is David.

16. _____

It's a Mercedes.

Lesson 6 What make is it?

它是什么牌子的？

I. Rewrite the sentences, using "he", "she" or "it" according to the example. 仿照例句用 he, she 或 it 改写下列句子。

1. That book is French.
   It is a French book.
2. That teacher is English.
   _____
3. This car is Swedish.
   _____
4. This watch is German.
   _____
5. That student is Korean.
   _____
6. This house is nice.
   _____
7. That car is Japanese.
   _____
8. Our teacher is good.
   _____
9. This student is new.
   _____
10. This car is Italian.
    _____

II. Answer the questions, using the words given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Is it a Swedish car or an American car? (American)
   It's an American car.
   b. Is Hans a German student or a French student? (German)
   _____
   c. Is Fiat a French car or an Italian car? (Italian)
   _____
   d. Is he a Chinese teacher or a Korean teacher? (Korean)
   _____

e. Is it an English car or a French car? (English)

_____

f. Is Sophie a new student or an old student? (new)

_____

g. Is Peugeot a German car or a French car? (French)

_____

h. Is she a Korean student or a Japanese student? (Japanese)

_____

2. a. Is Linda American or English? (American)

She is American .

b. Is he French or Italian? (French)

_____

c. Is Toyota Japanese or American? (Japanese)

_____

d. Is Fiat French or Italian? (Italian)

_____

e. Is Naoko Korean or Japanese? (Japanese)

_____

f. Is she German or Swedish? (Swedish)

_____

g. Is Li Ming Chinese or Japanese? (Chinese)

_____

h. Is Daewoo Italian or Korean? (Korean)

_____

Lesson 7 Are you a teacher?

你是教师吗？

I. Complete the sentences with "am", "is" or "are". 用 am, is 或 are 填空。

1. I _____ a new student. My name _____ Alice.
2. _____ you a new student, too?
   Yes, I _____.
3. _____ Hans German?
   Yes, he _____.
4. _____ Sophie German, too?
   No, she _____ not. She _____ French.
5. I _____ an English teacher. My sister _____ an English teacher, too.
6. You _____ my friend. She _____ my friend, too.
7. _____ you Italian?
   No, I _____ not. I _____ Swedish.
8. What _____ your job?
   I _____ a keyboard operator.
9. What _____ his job?
   He _____ an engineer.
10. _____ his brother an engineer, too?
    No, he _____ not. He _____ a teacher.

II. Answer the questions, using "Yes, I am." or "No, I'm not. I'm ..." according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Are you a boy?
   Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a girl.

b. Are you a girl?

_____

c. Are you a student?

_____

d. Are you a man?

_____

e. Are you a woman?

_____

f. Are you an engineer?

_____

g. Are you a keyboard operator?

_____

h. Are you a nurse?

_____

2. a. Are you Mary? (Jane)

No, I'm not. I'm Jane.

b. Are you a keyboard operator? (teacher)

_____

c. Are you Chinese? (Korean)

_____

d. Are you a postman? (milkman)

_____

e. Are you a hairdresser? (taxi driver)

_____

f. Are you a mechanic? (policeman)

_____

g. Are you a housewife? (air hostess)

_____

h. Are you a policewoman? (nurse)

_____

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Are you a teacher? (yes)

   Yes, I am.

2. What nationality are you? (English)

   I'm English.

3. What's your job? (nurse)

   I'm a nurse.

4. Are you French or German? (French)

   I'm not German. I'm French.

5. Are you an engineer? (no/mechanic)

   _____

6. What's your job? (air hostess)

   _____

7. What nationality is he? (Swedish)

   _____

8. Is he a doctor or a nurse? (doctor)

   _____

9. What's your job? (policeman)

   _____

10. Is she Korean or Japanese? (Japanese)

    _____

11. Are you a milkman? (no/hairdresser)

    _____

12. What nationality are you? (Chinese)

    _____

13. Is it an English car? (no/German)

_____

14. Is he a German student? (no/Italian)

_____

15. Are you a keyboard operator? (yes)

_____

16. Is she a keyboard operator, too? (no/housewife)

_____

Lesson 8 What's your job?

你是做什么工作的？

I. Complete the sentences with "a" or "an". 用 a 或 an 完成下列句子。

1. My name is Thomas. I am _____ Italian student. My father is _____ engineer. My mother is _____ teacher.
2. Here's _____ new book. It's _____ English book.
3. What's your job?
   I'm _____ hairdresser.
4. Are you _____ policewoman?
   No, I'm not _____ policewoman. I'm _____ air hostess.
5. This is _____ umbrella. It's _____ old umbrella.
6. Is he _____ mechanic or _____ taxi driver?
   He's _____ taxi driver.
7. What's her job?
   She's _____ keyboard operator.
8. This is _____ English car. It's _____ Mini.
9. Are you _____ German student or _____ Italian student?
10. What make is it?
    It's _____ Ford.

II. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. your/milkman

What's your job?

I'm a milkman.

2. your/engineer

3. her/nurse

4. his/teacher

5. his/mechanic

6. your/postman

7. your/hairdresser

8. his/taxi driver

9. her/keyboard operator

10. her/air hostess

11. your/policewoman

12. her/housewife

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is he an engineer or a mechanic? (engineer)

He isn't a mechanic. He's an engineer.

2. Are you a taxi driver or a mechanic? (taxi driver)

3. Is she a nurse or a doctor? (doctor)

4. Is he a postman or a milkman? (milkman)

_____

5. Are you a French teacher or an English teacher? (English teacher)

_____

6. Is your sister a nurse or an air hostess? (air hostess)

_____

7. Is your teacher German or Swedish? (German)

_____

8. Are you a keyboard operator or a nurse? (keyboard operator)

_____

9. Are you a policeman or a hairdresser? (hairdresser)

_____

10. Are you a teacher or a student? (student)

_____

Lesson 9 How are you today?

你今天好吗？

I. Complete the sentences with "I'm", "He's", "She's" or "It's". 用 I'm, He's, She's 或 It's 完成下列句子。

1. How are you today?
   _____ very well, thank you.
2. This is a book. _____ an old book.
3. How is your mother?
   _____ fine, thanks.
4. My brother is a teacher. _____ an English teacher.
5. What's your job?
   _____ an engineer.
6. Look at that car. _____ dirty!
7. Jane is American. _____ my friend.
8. This is Mr. Rankin. _____ a policeman.
9. What nationality are you?
   _____ Chinese.
10. What make is the car?
    _____ a Daewoo. _____ my car.
11. My son is a student. _____ very busy.
12. How is Helen today?
    _____ very well, thank you.
13. Is this your house? _____ very nice.
14. Steven isn't French. _____ English.
15. Look at that watch. _____ very old.

16. Look at that man. _____ lazy.

II. Write the correct questions for the answers, using "How is/are ...?" according to the example. 仿照例句，根据答案用 How is/are ...提问。

1. *How are you?*
(you) I'm very well, thank you.
2. _____
(Emma) She's fine, thanks.
3. _____
(Tony) He is very well, thank you.
4. _____
(Tom) He's fine, thank you.
5. _____
(your mother) She's fine, thank you.
6. _____
(David) He's very well, thank you.
7. _____
(your sister) She's very well, thank you.
8. _____
(you) I'm fine, thanks.
9. _____
(Helen) She's very well.
10. _____
(your father) He's fine.
11. _____
(John) He's fine, thanks.
12. _____
(your son) He's very well, thank you.

III. Match the questions in Column A with the answers in Column B. 在B栏中找出与A栏中的问题相对应的答案。

A	B
1. How is Tony today?	a. I'm very well, thank you.
2. Is it cold today?	b. No, it isn't. It's old.
3. Is Steven well today?	c. Yes, she is.
4. Is Emma well, too?	d. Yes, he is.
5. Is your brother tall?	e. He's very well, thank you.
6. How is your wife?	f. Yes, I am.
7. How are you today?	g. No, she isn't. She's old.
8. Are you well today?	h. No, he isn't. He's short.
9. Is your shirt new?	i. She's fine, thanks.
10. Is she young?	j. Yes, it is.

Lesson 10 Look at . . .

看……

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Are you cold? *No, I'm not.*
   Are you hot? *Yes, I am.*
2. Is that pencil long? _____
   Is it short? _____
3. Is that book new? _____
   Is it old? _____
4. Is that man fat? _____
   Is he thin? _____
5. Is your car dirty? _____
   Is it clean? _____
6. Are you a teacher? _____
   Are you a student? _____
7. Is Helen old? _____
   Is she young? _____
8. Is your room big? _____
   Is it small? _____
9. Is your brother short? _____
   Is he tall? _____
10. Are you French? _____
    Are you German? _____

11. Is it hot today? _____

Is it cold today? _____

12. Is your skirt blue? _____

Is it white? _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is that mechanic clean or dirty? (dirty)

He isn't clean. He's dirty.

2. Is that policewoman young or old? (young)

_____

3. Are you cold or hot? (cold)

_____

4. Is that keyboard operator tall or short? (tall)

_____

5. Is your handbag new or old? (old)

_____

6. Is a Volvo French or Swedish? (Swedish)

_____

7. Is Steven fat or thin? (fat)

_____

8. Is that boy good or bad at school? (good)

_____

9. Is that book thick or thin? (thick)

_____

10. Is your shirt big or small? (small)

_____

Lesson 11 Is this your shirt?

这是你的衬衫吗？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is this your tie? (yes)
   Yes, it is. It's my tie.
2. Is this your sister? (no/Tim's)
   No, she isn't. She isn't my sister. She's Tim's sister.
3. Is this his umbrella? (no/her)
   _____
4. Is this your house? (no/my father's)
   _____
5. Is this her blouse? (yes)
   _____
6. Is this Tony's car? (no/her)
   _____
7. Is this my pen? (no/my)
   _____
8. Is this Helen's handbag? (yes)
   _____
9. Is this Sophie's dress? (no/Emma's)
   _____
10. Is this Robert's coat? (no/Robert's brother's)
    _____

11. Is this your father? (no/Helen's)

_____

12. Is this his suit? (yes)

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. This is Emma's skirt. *This skirt is Emma's.*
2. This is my father's car. _____
3. This is Tim's tie. _____
4. This is Xiao Fang's blouse. _____
5. This is my mother's watch. _____
6. This is Helen's ticket. _____
7. This is Dave's sister's room. _____
8. This is that policeman's coat. _____
9. This is my teacher's office. _____
10. This is Steven's suit. _____

III. Underline the possessive nouns with apostrophes "'" in the sentences. 在下列句中的名词所有格下面划线。

1. Mr. Scott is Jean's father.
2. Is Mrs. Scott Jean's mother?
3. Dave's an American student.
4. My sister's blouse is white.
5. Helen's handbag's blue.
6. It's my son's.
7. This is the old man's hat.
8. Emma's skirt's blue.
9. Her name's very nice.
10. That umbrella's my sister's.

11. That shirt's Steven's.
12. It's the boy's bike.
13. Is this new tie Robert's?
14. Helen's mother's a nurse.

Lesson 12 Whose is this . . . ?
This is my/your/his/her . . .
Whose is that . . . ?
That is my/your/his/her . . .

这……是谁的？
这是我的/你的/他的/她的……
那……是谁的？
那是我的/你的/他的/她的……

I. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Whose shirt is that?
   Whose is that shirt?
2. Whose pencil is this?
   _____
3. Whose tie is that?
   _____
4. Whose coat is this?
   _____
5. Whose umbrella is that?
   _____
6. Whose blouse is that?
   _____
7. Whose car is this?
   _____
8. Whose watch is this?
   _____
9. Whose handbag is that?
   _____
10. Whose dress is this?
    _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Whose is that blue shirt? Is it Tim's? (Steven)
   No, it isn't Tim's. It's Steven's.

2. Whose is that black umbrella? Is it Tony's? (my brother)

_____

3. Whose is this dirty coat? Is it Robert's? (Emma)

_____

4. Whose is that new Ford? Is it your father's? (that mechanic)

_____

5. Whose is this small handbag? Is it Ruth's? (Diana)

_____

6. Whose is that long blouse? Is it your sister's? (Helen)

_____

7. Whose is this white skirt? Is it your sister's? (my mother)

_____

8. Whose is this old house? Is it William's? (Maria)

_____

9. Whose is that fat dog? Is it Sophie's? (my daughter)

_____

10. Whose is that nice tie? Is it Paul's? (my brother)

_____

Lesson 13 A new dress

一件新连衣裙

I. Complete the questions with "What", "Whose" or "How". 用 What, Whose 或 How 完成下列特殊疑问句。

1. _____ is this white car?
2. _____ nationality is he?
3. _____ is your name?
4. _____ are you?
5. _____ colour is your new dress?
6. _____ is her job?
7. _____ do you do?
8. _____ make is her car?
9. _____ is Helen?
10. _____ tie is that?
11. _____ is this nice watch?
12. _____ is your father's job?
13. _____ nationality is Hans?
14. _____ is this smart dress?
15. _____ colour is the policeman's coat?
16. _____ is this umbrella?
17. _____ is your mother?
18. _____ is your daughter's name?
19. _____ is that nice hat?
20. _____ colour is Sophie's hair?

II. Make sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句造句。

1. this/my coat/green

   This is my coat. It's green.

2. that/his shirt/white

   That is his shirt. It's white.

3. this/your chair/clean

4. that/your son's pencil/yellow

5. this/her hat/grey

6. that/her dress/smart

7. this/my book/new

8. that/Emma's car/red

9. this/his tie/blue

10. that/your case/brown

11. this/my skirt/long

12. that/his suit/black

Lesson 14 What colour's your . . . ?

你的……是什么颜色的?

I. Write the questions for the answers according to the example.
仿照例句根据答案提问。

1. *What colour's your carpet?*
(your carpet) It's green.
2. _____
(Paul's tie) His tie's blue and yellow.
3. _____
(your brother's car) It's black.
4. _____
(that old man's hair) His hair's grey.
5. _____
(Sophie's hat) Her hat's orange.
6. _____
(your son's dog) It's black and white.
7. _____
My pencil's yellow.
8. _____
Her handbag's red.
9. _____
His case is brown.
10. _____
Stella's coat's blue.

11. _____

My shirt's white.

12. _____

Anna's skirt's brown.

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. What colour's Naoko's skirt? (red)

It's red.

What colour's her sister's skirt? (red)

It's the same colour. It's red, too.

2. What colour's your mother's blouse? (brown)

_____

What colour's your blouse? (brown)

_____

3. What colour's Tim's case? (black)

_____

What colour's his brother's case? (black)

_____

4. What colour's Ann's hat? (grey and black)

_____

What colour's her sister's hat? (grey and black)

_____

5. What colour's that policeman's suit? (green)

_____

What colour's that policewoman's suit? (green)

_____

6. What colour's your dog? (brown and white)

_____

What colour's your cat? (brown and white)

_____

7. What colour's Steven's carpet? (orange)

_____

What colour's his tie? (orange)

_____

8. What colour's Helen's umbrella? (yellow)

_____

What colour's her handbag? (yellow)

_____

Lesson 15 Your passports, please.

请出示你们的护照。

I. Write the plural form of each word. 写出下列单词的复数形式。

1. a girl　　two _____
2. a friend　　two _____
3. a case　　two _____
4. a passport　　two _____
5. an engineer　　two _____
6. a ticket　　two _____
7. a student　　two _____
8. a tourist　　two _____
9. a pencil　　two _____
10. a tie　　two _____

II. Answer the questions according to the statements given and the examples. 仿照例句用所给信息回答下列问题。

1. The books are new.
   Are the books new?
   Yes, they are.
2. The pencils are short.
   Are the pencils long?
   No, they aren't. They are short.

3. Our doors are white.
   Are your doors red?

   _____

4. The tourists are Swedish.
   Are the tourists German?

   _____

5. These cars are dirty.
   Are these cars clean?

   _____

6. These engineers are busy.
   Are these engineers busy?

   _____

7. Our friends are Danish.
   Are your friends Norwegian?

   _____

8. The carpets are red.
   Are the carpets brown?

   _____

9. The mechanics are dirty.
   Are the mechanics dirty?

   _____

10. Our passports are green.
    Are your passports yellow?

    _____

III. Fill in the blanks with "am", "is" or "are". 用 am, is 或 are 填空。

1. _____ your girl friend fat or thin?
2. We _____ all very well, thank you.
3. Our house _____ big and clean.

4. Look! Here _____ my dress. It _____ very smart.
5. _____ you Dutch tourists?
6. We _____ not German. We _____ Norwegian.
7. _____ you an engineer or a taxi driver?
8. These _____ my books. Whose _____ these pens and pencils?
9. My friend _____ a teacher. His two brothers _____ teachers, too.
10. _____ these your pens? What make _____ they?
11. Here _____ our passports.
12. How _____ your parents?
    They _____ very well, thank you.

Lesson 16 Are you . . . ?

你是……吗？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Are you two Russian? (Dutch)

No, we aren't. We're Dutch.

b. Are the tourists English? (German)

c. Are you two Swedish? (Italian)

d. Are the students Japanese? (Korean)

e. Are you two American? (German)

f. Are their handbags black? (white)

g. Are your cars German? (Japanese)

h. Are our passports red? (green)

i. Are these cars new? (old)

j. Are your hats big? (small)

2. a. Are they American or English? (English)

They aren't American. They're English.

b. Are their ties orange or yellow? (orange)

c. Are you two Danish or Dutch? (Danish)

d. Are you two English or French? (French)

e. Are your shirts dirty or clean? (clean)

f. Are the dogs grey or white? (white)

g. Are the cases black or brown? (brown)

h. Are the blouses big or small? (big)

i. Are they young or old? (old)

j. Are you two boys cold or hot? (hot)

II. Rewrite the sentences in the plural according to the example. 仿照例句将下列句子改为复数形式。

1. I am Danish. *We are Danish.*
2. It's an umbrella.
3. Is he a hairdresser?
4. Here it is.
5. This is my son.
6. Is your brother tall?

7. Here is your ticket. _____
8. Is she a keyboard operator? _____
9. My friend is Norwegian. _____
10. Is this your passport? _____
11. What colour's your tie? _____
12. Is this your blouse? _____
13. His shirt's white. _____
14. Whose is this book? _____
15. How is your daughter? _____
16. This pen is Paul's. _____
17. Are you a Customs officer? _____
18. I'm a nurse. _____
19. What make is this car? _____
20. What colour's your coat? _____

Lesson 17 How do you do?

你好！

I. Write the plural form of each word. 写出下列单词的复数形式。

1. a watch　　two _____
2. a man　　two _____
3. a policeman　　two _____
4. an air hostess　　two _____
5. an assistant　　two _____
6. a box　　two _____
7. a housewife　　two _____
8. a policewoman　　two _____
9. a postman　　two _____
10. a dress　　two _____
11. a woman　　two _____
12. a class　　two _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What are their jobs? (policeman)
   They're policemen.
2. What are these men's jobs? (milkman)
   _____
3. What are your two brothers' jobs? (engineer)
   _____

4. What are these women's jobs? (housewife)

_____

5. What are the girls' jobs? (nurse)

_____

6. What are your jobs? (policewoman)

_____

7. What are their jobs? (office assistant)

_____

8. What are these young men's jobs? (sales rep)

_____

9. What are the girls' jobs? (air hostess)

_____

10. What are your jobs? (postman)

_____

III. Rewrite the sentences in the plural according to the example. 仿照例句将下列句子改为复数形式。

1. That office assistant is hard-working.
   Those office assistants are hard-working.
2. That policeman is tall.

   _____
3. That housewife is fat.

   _____
4. That teacher is very old.

   _____
5. That employee is young.

   _____
6. That air hostess is very thin.

   _____

7. That dress is very smart.

_____

8. That mechanic is busy.

_____

9. That postman is lazy.

_____

10. That hat is lovely.

_____

11. The Customs officer is strong.

_____

12. The dog is black.

_____

13. The nurse is nice.

_____

14. The bag is brown.

_____

Lesson 18 What are their jobs?

他们是做什么工作的？

I. Fill in the blanks with possessive adjectives "my", "your", "his", "her", "our", "your" or "their". 用所有格形容词 my, your, his, her, our, your 或 their 填空。

1. Excuse me. What's _____ name?
   My name's Sophie.
2. Michael Baker and Jeremy Short are sales reps, and here are _____ offices.
3. Where are my cases?
   _____ cases are here.
4. She's a hard-working policewoman. What's _____ name?
5. We are Danish, and _____ friends are Danish, too.
6. Paul's son is a keyboard operator and _____ daughter is a teacher.
7. This is Anna and this is Louise.
   What are _____ jobs?
   Anna's a hairdresser and Louise is a nurse.
8. I'm a sales rep. What's _____ job?
   I'm an engineer.
9. Whose is this pen? It isn't _____ pen! My pen is blue.
10. My name is Paul Smith. This is _____ wife, Stella Smith. And these are _____ children, Dave and Anna.

II. Write the correct questions for the answers according to the examples. 仿照例句根据答案提问。

1. *Who are these men?*

(these men) They are my friends.

What are their jobs?

They're Customs officers.

2. *Who is this young man?*

(this young man) He is John.

What's his job?

He's a keyboard operator.

3. _____

(that girl) She is my sister.

_____

She's an air hostess.

4. _____

(these two men) They are Dave and Jack.

_____

They're sales reps.

5. _____

(those people) They are my father and mother.

_____

My father's a mechanic and my mother's a nurse.

6. _____

(this man and woman) They are Paul and Jane.

_____

Paul's an office assistant and Jane's a hairdresser.

7. _____

(they) They are my son and daughter.

_____

My son's an engineer and my daughter's a teacher.

8. _____

(these women) They are my friends.

_____

They're policewomen.

9. _____

(this man) He is Dave.

_____

He's a milkman.

10. _____

(they) They are Tom and Tony.

_____

They're postmen.

Lesson 19 Tired and thirsty

又累又渴

I. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. you/thirsty/no
   Are you thirsty?
   No, we aren't thirsty.

2. they/all right/yes
   Are they all right?
   Yes, they are.

3. you/tired/yes
   _____
   _____

4. they/Norwegian/no
   _____
   _____

5. you/busy/no
   _____
   _____

6. you/Dutch/yes
   _____
   _____

7. the boys/tall/yes
   _____
   _____

8. these trousers/long/yes
   _____
   _____

9. the teachers/young/no
   _____
   _____

10. the shops/big/no
    _____
    _____

11. her shoes/dirty/yes
    _____
    _____

12. your hands/clean/yes
    _____
    _____

13. your parents/well/yes
    _____
    _____

14. the cases/heavy/no
    _____
    _____

II. Make sentences, using "There is a/an ..." according to the example. 仿照例句用"There is a/an ..."造句。

1. postman — *Look. There's a postman.*
2. air hostess _____
3. policeman _____
4. American car _____
5. Volvo _____
6. ice cream man _____
7. new Mercedes _____
8. Customs officer _____
9. old Ford _____
10. open shop _____

III. Translate the following sentences into English. 将下列句子译成英文。

1. 请把我的大衣和帽子拿给我。 _____
2. 请出示你们的护照。 _____
3. 请出示你们的票。 _____
4. 请拿三份冰淇淋。 _____
5. 请坐下。 _____
6. 来见见我的朋友。 _____
7. 到楼上来看看吧。 _____
8. 请看那张图片。 _____

IV. Answer the questions about yourself. 根据你的实际情况回答下列问题。

1. What's your name?
2. What nationality are you?
3. Are you old or young?

4. Are your parents old?
5. Are they busy?
6. What are your father's and mother's jobs?
7. How are you and your parents?
8. Are the boys and girls in your class tall or short?
9. Are they thin or fat?
10. Are your teachers young or old?

Lesson 20 Look at them!

看看他/它们！

I. Make statements, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. we/cold/hot
   We're cold. We aren't hot.
2. they/short/tall
3. those doors/shut/open
4. these boxes/heavy/light
5. my skirts/long/short
6. we/hard-working/lazy
7. you/young/old
8. these dresses/new/old
9. those watches/small/big
10. those housewives/lazy/hard-working

11. these policemen/fat/thin

_____

12. your hands/clean/dirty

_____

13. our hats/white/black

_____

14. these children/good/bad

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences in the plural according to the example. 仿照例句将下列句子改为复数形式。

1. My book is heavy. *My books are heavy.*
2. Your student is hard-working. _____
3. This air hostess is busy. _____
4. Your shoe is dirty. _____
5. This ice cream is nice. _____
6. The shop is shut. _____
7. That tourist is thirsty. _____
8. His child's hand is clean. _____
9. This old housewife is tired. _____
10. Her box is light. _____
11. He's tall. _____
12. She's thin. _____

Lesson 21 Which book?

哪一本书？

I. Add "a", "an" or "the" where necessary. 在必要的空白处填上 a, an 或 the。

1. Here is _____ cup and _____ glass. _____ cup is small and _____ glass is big.
2. Give me _____ book, please.
   Which one?
   _____ red one, please.
3. Look! There's _____ policeman.
   Yes, and there's _____ engineer. _____ policeman is young, but _____ engineer is old.
4. Mr. Jones isn't _____ student. He's _____ teacher. He's _____ very good teacher!
5. Sophie is _____ French and she is _____ air hostess.
6. This is Robert. He is _____ new student.
7. What _____ make is your car?
   It's _____ Mini.
8. Give me _____ umbrella, please.
   _____ umbrella? Which one?
   That one.
9. Who is _____ man in _____ park?
   _____ man in _____ park is _____ ice cream man.

10. Give me _____ cup, please, John.
Here you are.
Not _____ dirty one! _____ clean one, please!

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the words given.
用所给代词的正确的格填空。

1. Give _____ (I) an ice cream, please.
2. This is _____ (I) new assistant. Come and meet _____ (she).
3. What's _____ (you) job?
_____ (I) am an engineer.
4. Look at that man. _____ (he) is very tall.
5. Are these the boys' books?
No, they aren't. _____ (they) books are new.
6. Give _____ (they) tea. _____ (they) are thirsty.
7. Are _____ (you) office assistants?
No, _____ (we) aren't. _____ (we) are sales reps.
8. Look at _____ (you) hands! Look at _____ (they)! They're very dirty.
9. What's the matter, Tom?
_____ (I) am tired.
10. _____ (we) are hot. Please give _____ (we) an ice cream.

Lesson 22 Give me/him/her/us/them a ... Which one?

给我/他/她/我们/他们一……
哪一……？

I. Make imperative sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造祈使句。

1. I want a ticket.
   Give me a ticket, please.
2. I want a coffee.
3. He wants a coffee, too.
4. She wants this book.
5. We want two pencils.
6. Tony wants his book.
7. Those tourists want two train tickets.
8. My daughter wants an ice cream.
9. They want their passports.

10. We want a pen.

_____

11. I want an egg.

_____

12. Helen wants an umbrella.

_____

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. Make changes where necessary. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话，并做必要的改变。

1. dog/brown

Look at those *dogs*! _____

Which is your dog? This one? _____

No, not that one. My dog is the brown one. _____

2. umbrella/green

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

3. hat/black and grey

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

4. knife/small

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

5. glass/empty

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

6. case/red

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

7. car/dirty

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

8. watch/blue

Look at those _____!

_____

_____

Lesson 23 Which glasses?

哪几只杯子？

I. Fill in the blanks with "one" or "ones". 用 one 或 ones 填空。

1. Are these your books? The _____ on the shelf?
2. I want to sell my old bike and buy a new _____.
3. Give me two cups, please.
   Which _____?
   The _____ on the table.
4. These new knives are very sharp but the old _____ are blunt.
5. Which is your chair?
   The _____ in your room.
6. Give me that tie, please. The orange _____.
7. Which apples do you want to buy?
   The red _____.
8. Which car is your father's? The German _____ or the Japanese _____?
9. Give me some pictures, please.
   Which _____?
   The _____ on the shelf.
10. There is a long spoon on the table and a short _____ on the plate.

II. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. Here's a small box. (big)

   This one isn't small. It's a big one.

2. Here are some blue shoes. (grey)

   These aren't blue. They're grey.

3. Here's an old coat. (new)

   _____

4. Here's a small shirt. (large)

   _____

5. Here are some yellow dresses. (green)

   _____

6. Here are some short spoons. (long)

   _____

7. Here's a blunt knife. (sharp)

   _____

8. Here are some grey hats. (white)

   _____

9. Here's a black pen. (blue)

   _____

10. Here's a dirty shirt. (clean)

    _____

III. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Give Helen some newspapers.

   Give her some newspapers.

2. Give Tom some books.

_____

3. Give my students some magazines.

_____

4. Give the children some pencils.

_____

5. Give Jane some shoes.

_____

6. Give me and my friend some pencils.

_____

7. Give the boys some ice creams.

_____

8. Give John some glasses.

_____

9. Give my mother and father some tickets.

_____

10. Give Tom some books.

_____

IV. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. The box on the floor is heavy.
   The boxes on the floor are heavy.
2. The bottle on the cupboard is empty.

_____

3. The knife on the box is blunt.

_____

4. The plate on the table is nice.

_____

5. The radio on the desk is old.

_____

6. The tie on the chair is yellow.

_____

7. The coat on the bed is thick.

_____

8. The flower on the dressing table is red.

_____

9. The book on the shelf is big.

_____

10. The carpet on the floor is old.

_____

Lesson 24 Give me/him/her/us/them some . . . Which ones?

给我/他/她/我们/他们一些……
哪些？

I. Fill in the blanks with "some", "one" or "ones". 用 some, one 或 ones 填空。

1. Give me _____ knives and forks, please.
   Which _____?
   The _____ on the table.
2. Give me a magazine, please.
   Which _____? The big _____ or the small _____?
   The small _____.
3. Give us our umbrellas, please.
   Which _____? The _____ on the floor?
   Yes, the _____ on the floor.
4. Give me _____ pens, please.
   Which _____? The blue _____ or the red _____?
   Oh, the red _____.
5. Give me a tie, please.
   Which _____? A yellow _____ or a green _____?
   A green _____, please.

II. Complete the dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列对话。

1. Give me some knives, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (blunt)
   These, please. Those are blunt.

2. Give us some magazines, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (very small)
   _____

3. Give me some glasses, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (dirty)
   _____

4. Give us some cups, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (old)
   _____

5. Give me some bottles, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (full)
   _____

6. Give us some pens, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (old)
   _____

7. Give me some spoons, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (large)
   _____

8. Give me some plates, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (small)
   _____

9. Give us some shirts, please.
   Which ones? These or those? (white)
   _____

10. Give me some pencils, please.

Which ones? These or those? (red)

_____

Lesson 25 Mrs. Smith's kitchen

史密斯太太的厨房

I. Fill in the blanks with "a", "an" or "the". 用 a, an 或 the 填空。

1. There is _____ new table in our kitchen. It's in _____ middle of _____ kitchen.
2. There is _____ watch in _____ cupboard in your room.
3. These glasses are big. _____ ones on _____ table are dirty, _____ ones in _____ cupboard are clean.
4. Give me _____ knife, please.
   Which one?
   _____ sharp one, not _____ blunt one!
5. Is there _____ pen on my desk?
   Yes, there's _____ pen and there's _____ pencil. _____ pencil is a red one.
6. There is _____ refrigerator in Mrs. Smith's kitchen. _____ refrigerator is _____ white one.
7. What's _____ matter, John?
   I'm hot. Give me _____ ice cream, please.
8. Who is that man?
   He's _____ American tourist.
9. Here are two coats, _____ black one and _____ blue one. Which one is your coat? _____ black one or _____ blue one?
   My coat is _____ blue one.

10. Come and meet Molly. She's _____ keyboard operator.

II. Fill in the blanks with "in" or "on". 用 in 或 on 填空。

1. There is a picture _____ the wall.
2. There is water _____ the bottle.
3. There is a small table _____ the room.
4. My pens are _____ the desk.
5. There's a big box _____ the floor.
6. The tickets are _____ her handbag.
7. Where are my shoes?
   They're _____ the cupboard.
8. Jane's small bottles are _____ her dressing table.
9. Look at the new carpet _____ my room!
10. Is there a cooker _____ her new kitchen?
    Yes, there is.
11. The table is _____ the middle of the room, and the cups and plates are _____ the table.
12. There's the new cooker. And the new refrigerator is _____ the right.

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Is there a spoon in the cup? (on the plate/dirty)
   No, there isn't a spoon in the cup. There is one on the plate. It's dirty.
2. Is there a tin on the table? (in the refrigerator/big)
   _____

3. Is there a bottle on the cupboard? (in the cupboard/full)

_____

4. Is there a table in the middle of the room? (in the kitchen/brown)

_____

5. Is there a knife on the plate? (on the shelf/blunt)

_____

6. Is there an umbrella on the floor? (on the chair/red)

_____

7. Is there a tie on the bed? (on the dressing table/orange)

_____

8. Is there an electric cooker on the right of the cupboard? (on the left of the cupboard/new)

_____

9. Is there a magazine on the desk? (on the bed/new)

_____

10. Is there a window on the left of the door? (on the right of the door/open)

_____

11. Is there a knife on the plate? (on the tin/green)

_____

12. Is there a box on the shelf? (on the refrigerator/empty)

_____

Lesson 26 Where is it?

它在哪里？

I. Fill in the blanks with "a", "an" or "the". 用 a, an 或 the 填空。

1. Is there _____ book on _____ table?
   Yes, there is. There is _____ big red book.
   Give me _____ book, please.
   Here you are.
2. There are some glasses here. _____ glasses on _____ shelf are clean, _____ glasses on _____ table are dirty.
3. Look at John's new car.
   What make is it?
   It's _____ Fiat.
4. My new friend is _____ American student.
5. Is this your pen?
   Is it _____ blue one?
   Yes, it's _____ blue one.
   It's my pen. Thank you.
6. There is _____ orange bottle in the refrigerator. _____ bottle is full.
7. On _____ right there is _____ television and on _____ left there is _____ desk.
8. There's _____ cigarette shop and it's open!
9. There's _____ electric cooker in our kitchen. It's new

and it's white.

10. My father is _____ engineer. I am _____ son of _____ engineer.

II. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. my key/on the table

Where is my key?

It's on the table.

2. your pencil/on the book

3. my coat/on the bed

4. your fork/on my plate

5. the refrigerator/in the kitchen

6. your pen/in my schoolbag

7. my watch/on the dressing table

8. the newspaper/on the television

9. the stereo/on the cupboard

_____

_____

10. the television/in the middle of the room

_____

_____

Lesson 27 Mrs. Smith's living room

史密斯太太的客厅

I. Fill in the blanks with "in", "on" or "near". 用 in, on 或 near 填空。

This is a classroom _____ a school. The teacher is _____ the classroom, and the students are _____ the classroom, too. There is a table _____ the room. There are some pencils and some flowers _____ the table. The teacher is _____ the table. There are two windows _____ the room. The window _____ the left is open, but the window _____ the right is shut. A student is _____ the open window. There is a clock _____ the wall _____ the door, and there is a picture _____ the wall.

II. Rewrite the sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. a. There's a girl in the class.

   There are some girls in the class.

   b. There's a magazine on the table.

   _____

   c. There's a pen on the desk.

   _____

d. There's a book on the stereo.

_____

e. There's an air hostess on the aeroplane.

_____

f. There's a black dog in the garden.

_____

g. There's a boy in the kitchen.

_____

h. There's an office assistant in the office.

_____

i. There's a bottle in the refrigerator.

_____

j. There's a policewoman in the street.

_____

2. a. Is there a chair in the kitchen?

Are there any chairs in the kitchen?

b. Is there a window in the room?

_____

c. Is there a fork in the box?

_____

d. Is there a magazine on the shelf?

_____

e. Is there an egg in the basket?

_____

f. Is there a tin in the cupboard?

_____

g. Is there an armchair in the living room?

_____

h. Is there a cup in the cupboard?

_____

i. Is there a shoe near the door?

_____

j. Is there a picture on the wall?

_____

III. Ask and answer questions according to the example. 仿照例句提问并回答。

1. sharp pencils/on the desk; blunt pencils/in my schoolbag

Are there any sharp pencils on the desk?

No, there aren't any sharp pencils on the desk. There are some blunt ones in my schoolbag.

2. clean glasses/in the cupboard; dirty glasses/on the table

_____

_____

3. big plates/on the table; small plates/on the shelf

_____

_____

4. red flowers/in the living room; yellow flowers/in the living room

_____

_____

5. long spoons/in the cupboard; short spoons/on this plate

_____

_____

6. new chairs/in the classroom; old chairs/in the classroom

_____

_____

7. full bottles/on the floor; empty bottles/on the table

_____

_____

8. dirty shirts/on the bed; dirty shirts/on the chair

_____

_____

9. blue hats/in this shop; blue hats/in that shop

_____

_____

10. green leaves/on the tree; yellow leaves/on the ground

_____

_____

Lesson 28 Where are they?

它们在哪里？

I. Fill in the blanks with "Where", "Whose", "Who", "What", "Which", "What colour" or "What make". 用 Where, Whose, Who, What, Which, What colour 或 What make 填空。

1. _____ are the tickets?
   They're in the kitchen.
2. _____ is this pen?
   It's Anna's.
3. Give me some magazines, please.
   _____ ones? These?
4. _____ is that car?
   It's a Volvo.
5. _____ is your coat?
   It's black.
6. _____ is that young woman?
   That's Jane.
7. _____ nationality is that man?
   He's French.
8. _____ is my coat?
   It's on your bed.
9. _____ are these trousers?
   They're my brother's.
10. _____ is there near the window?
    An armchair.

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Where are my cigarettes? (in the living room/on the table)
   They're in the living room. They're on the table.
2. Where are the flowers? (near the bed/in the vase)

   _____
3. Where are my shoes? (near the television/under your armchair)

   _____
4. Where are our shirts and coats? (on the bed/in the bedroom)

   _____
5. Where are the dirty plates? (in the kitchen/on the table)

   _____
6. Where are the knives and forks? (in the kitchen/in the cupboard)

   _____
7. Where are your passports? (on the dressing table/in a box)

   _____
8. Where are the empty tins? (near the door/in the box)

   _____

III. Fill in the blanks with "some" or "any". 用 some 或 any 填空。

1. Are there _____ pictures on the wall?
   Yes, there are _____ lovely pictures on the wall.

2. Are there _____ men in the garden?
   No, there aren't _____ men in the garden.
3. Are there _____ dirty glasses on the table?
   No, there aren't. There are _____ clean ones in that box.
4. There are _____ magazines on the table.
   Are there _____ magazines on the table?
   There aren't _____ magazines on the table.
5. Are there _____ ice creams in the refrigerator?
6. There are _____ sales reps in the office.

Lesson 29 Come in, Amy.

进来，艾米。

I. Give correct replies to the sentences, using the words given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词写出下列各句的对应句。

1. The spoons and forks are dirty. (clean)
   Clean them, please.
2. These beds are untidy. (make)
   _____
3. The room is hot. (open/window)
   _____
4. This knife is blunt. (sharpen)
   _____
5. Your hands and face aren't clean. (wash)
   _____
6. The clothes are on the bed. (put/in the wardrobe)
   _____
7. The cupboard is full. (empty)
   _____
8. The door is open. (shut)
   _____
9. Your pencils are blunt. (sharpen)
   _____

10. The floor of the living room is dirty. (sweep)

_____

11. It's dark in the room. (turn on/light)

_____

12. The stereo is on. (turn off/stereo)

_____

13. The bookshelf is dirty. (dust)

_____

14. It's cold outside. (put on/your coat)

_____

15. The cooker isn't clean. (clean)

_____

16. The windows are open. (close)

_____

17. The knife isn't sharp. (sharpen)

_____

18. It's hot in the room. (take off/your coat)

_____

19. The box is full. (empty)

_____

20. This is a good book. (read)

_____

II. Translate the imperative sentences into English. 将下列祈使句译成英文。

1. 请进来。

_____

2. 请坐下。

_____

3. 给我一把伞。

4. 把窗户打开，让房间通通风。

5. 打开你的书，读第一课。

6. 请把你的票给我。

7. 把桌子上的灰掸掉，再把地扫一下。

8. 把你的裙子放到衣柜里去。

9. 把你的自行车擦干净。

10. 把报纸放到桌子上。

11. 打开电视。

12. 关火。

13. 打开你的箱子。

14. 请把教室打扫干净。

15. 把书放到书架上。

16. 把盘子里的东西倒掉。

Lesson 30 What must I do?

我应该做什么？

I. Match the verbs on the left with words on the right. 将左右两边适当的搭配用直线连接起来。

1. Air ...	a. ... this magazine.
2. Sharpen ...	b. ... your books.
3. Shut ...	c. ... your shoes.
4. Empty ...	d. ... our new office assistant.
5. Turn on ...	e. ... the light.
6. Sweep ...	f. ... this room.
7. Take off ...	g. ... those boxes.
8. Read ...	h. ... the floor.
9. Open ...	i. ... that pencil.
10. Come and meet ...	j. ... the windows.

II. Answer the question "What must I do?" using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题"我应该做什么?"

1. sweep/the floor — What must I do?
   Sweep the floor, please.
2. empty/the box — What must I do?
   _____
3. read/this magazine — What must I do?
   _____

4. dust/the cupboard What must I do?

_____

5. clean/the electric cooker What must I do?

_____

6. make/your bed What must I do?

_____

7. close/your case What must I do?

_____

8. put on/your tie What must I do?

_____

9. turn off/the tap What must I do?

_____

10. sharpen/these pencils What must I do?

_____

Lesson 31 Where's Sally?

萨莉在哪里?

I. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. Is the boy in bed? (no)

No, he isn't.

Where is he? (in the garden/hot)

He's in the garden. He's hot.

What's he doing? (run across the lawn)

He's running across the lawn.

2. Is your mother in her chair? (no)

Where is she? (in the kitchen/busy)

What's she doing? (cook a meal)

3. Is your daughter in the shop? (no)

Where is she? (in the classroom/busy)

What's she doing? (read a book)

4. Is Jack here? (no)

Where is he? (in the living room/tired)

What's he doing? (read a magazine)

_____

5. Is John in the living room? (no)

_____

Where is he? (in the kitchen/thirsty)

_____

What's he doing? (drink tea)

_____

6. Is your brother at home? (no)

_____

Where is he? (in his office/tired)

_____

What's he doing? (clean the office)

_____

7. Is the employee in the office? (no)

_____

Where is he? (at home/lazy)

_____

What's he doing? (watch television)

_____

8. Is Nicola in the park? (no)

_____

Where is she? (in her room/cold)

_____

What's she doing? (put on some clothes)

_____

II. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. My teacher is sitting at the desk. (write a letter)

She is writing a letter.

2. Mike is opening the window. (look at the garden)

_____

3. My daughter is sitting under a tree. (read a newspaper)

_____

4. A dog is running in the garden. (run after a cat)

_____

5. Mary is sharpening a pencil. (do her homework)

_____

6. Tom is near the bed. (put on his tie)

_____

7. My mother is turning on the tap. (clean the plates)

_____

8. Jane is near the door. (turn on the light)

_____

9. Mrs. Jones is working in the office. (type a letter)

_____

10. A cat is under a tree. (drink its milk)

_____

Lesson 32 What's he/she/it doing?

他/她/它正在做什么?

I. Ask and answer questions according to the example. 仿照例句提问并回答。

1. Ann/read — *Is Ann reading?* / *Yes, she is.*
2. Sam/climb a tree
3. Kathy/cook
4. Miss Scott/run
5. Pedro/make his bed
6. Marie/clean the room
7. she/drink tea
8. he/clean his teeth
9. she/type a letter
10. your mother/sweep the floor

II. Make dialogues, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词编写对话。

1. a. the girl/run/walk/to school

Is the girl running? *No, she isn't.*

What is she doing? *She's walking.*

Where is she walking? *She's walking to school.*

b. Sam/sit on a chair/stand/near the door

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

c. Jane/sit in the garden/cook/in the kitchen

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

d. the dog/drink/eat a bone/under a tree

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

e. Tony/sweep the floor/empty a basket/in the garden

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

f. the cat/drink its milk/run/across the lawn

_____ _____

_____ _____

_____ _____

2. a. read a magazine/my father/your mother/clean her teeth

Who is reading a magazine? *My father is.*

What about your mother? *She is cleaning her teeth.*

b. turn on the light/Kathy/Mike/look at a picture

_____ _____

_____ _____

c. run across the lawn/the cat/the dog/run after the cat

_____ _____

_____ _____

d. listen to the stereo/Sally/Ann/put on her skirt

_____ _____

_____ _____

e. eat a bone/the dog/the cat/drink its milk

_____ _____

_____ _____

f. climb the tree in the garden/Jack/Jane/sit under the tree

_____ _____

_____ _____

Lesson 33 A fine day

晴天

I. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the verb given. 用所给动词的正确形式填空。

There _____ (be) some people at the seaside. It _____ (be) a fine day and the sun _____ (shine). It _____ (not rain). Some men and women _____ (sit) on the beach. They _____ (eat) ice creams or _____ (drink) tea or coffee. A man _____ (look) at the children. They _____ (play) on the sand near the sea. What _____ the dog _____ (do)? It _____ (sleep) under a big umbrella.

II. Make dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词编写对话。

1. boys/play football/girls/sing a song

Are the boys playing football?

Yes, they are.

Are the girls playing football, too?

No, they aren't. They're singing a song.

2. boys/sweep the floor/girls/clean the desks and chairs

_____

_____

_____

_____

3. you/watch television/your friends/listen to the radio

4. the dogs/eat bones/the cats/eat fish

5. the children in this room/write/the children in that room/cry

Lesson 34 What are they doing?

他们在做什么?

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题。

1. What are you looking at? (we/the boats)

We're looking at the boats.

Where are the boats? (on the river)

They are on the river.

2. What are Linda and her sister waiting for? (they/the bus)

Where are they waiting? (at the bus stop)

3. What are the children doing? (they/their homework)

Where are they doing their homework? (in their room)

4. What are the dogs eating? (they/bones)

Where are they eating the bones? (in the garden)

5. What are the girls doing? (they/look at a dress)

What colour is the dress? (red)

6. What are you doing? (we/wait for the next class)

_____

Who is your teacher? (Miss Scott)

_____

7. What are Mr. and Mrs. Wilson doing? (they/watch television)

_____

What are they watching? (the news)

_____

8. What are the babies doing? (they/sleep)

_____

Where are they sleeping? (in their bedroom)

_____

II. Write the correct "-ing" form of the verbs. 写出下列动词的 **-ing** 形式。

1. turn	_____	2. shine	_____
3. run	_____	4. take	_____
5. make	_____	6. walk	_____
7. type	_____	8. fly	_____
9. put	_____	10. empty	_____
11. dust	_____	12. cry	_____
13. shave	_____	14. shut	_____

Lesson 35 Our village

我们的村庄

I. Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition. 选择正确的介词填空。

1. Look! That girl's swimming _____(over, across) the river.
2. Look! That policeman's running _____ (out of, between) the shop.
3. Look! John's walking _____(across, between) two girls.
4. Look! The children are going _____(off, into) the park.
5. Look! Mary's running _____ (beside, along) the wall.
6. Look! Mark's sitting _____ (beside, between) his grandmother.
7. Look! That aeroplane's flying _____(under, in) the bridge!
8. Look! Those people are waiting _____(into, for) a bus.
9. Look! That dog's running _____(out of, after) our cat!
10. Look! That sales rep is going _____(across, into) the shop.

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题。

1. a. Is the young man coming out of the river? (go into)

No, he isn't. He's going into the river.

What's he doing? (swim)

He's swimming.

b. Are you walking across the street? (along)

What are you doing? (look at the shop windows)

c. Is the teacher going into the building? (come out of)

What is she doing? (read a magazine)

d. Are the boys climbing up the tree? (jump out of the tree)

What are they doing now? (play under the tree)

2. a. What's Ann doing? (read)

She's reading.

What's she reading? (a magazine)

She's reading a magazine.

b. What's Tim doing? (study)

What's he studying? (English)

c. What are Kathy and her mother doing? (wash)

What are they washing? (the dishes)

_____

d. What's the dog doing? (eat)

_____

What's it eating? (a bone)

_____

3. a. What's Sam doing? (type a letter)

He's typing a letter.

Where's he typing the letter? (in his office)

He's typing the letter in his office.

b. What are you and your wife doing? (run)

_____

Where are you running? (along the bank of a river)

_____

c. What are the girls doing? (look at some photographs)

_____

Where are they looking at the photographs? (in the kitchen)

_____

d. What's Helen doing? (clean her teeth)

_____

Where's she cleaning her teeth? (in the bathroom)

_____

Lesson 36 Where . . . ?

……在哪里？

I. Fill in the blanks with "some" or "any". 用 some 或 any 填空。

1. There are old men in the park. _____ are standing under trees; _____ are sitting on chairs.
2. Do you know _____ people here?
3. _____ children are playing on the sand; _____ are looking at the birds.
4. English people speak English, but _____ speak French.
5. There isn't _____ cheese left in the fridge.
6. _____ birds are flying over the bridge.
7. There aren't _____ villages in that valley.
8. Are there _____ children in the park?

II. Fill in the blanks with "beside", "between", "on", "along" or "out of". 用 beside, between, on, along 或 out of 填空。

1. Come and sit down _____ me under this tree.
2. In this photograph, the park is _____ the left and the school building is _____ the right.
3. Our village is in a valley _____ two big hills.
4. His small house is _____ Mr. Smith's and Mrs. White's.
5. Put your umbrella _____ my shoes near the door.
6. They're walking _____ the street in the village.

7. The children are sitting _____ the grass. It's wet!
8. Mrs. Green is coming _____ the shop with a loaf of bread.
9. In this photograph, I am standing _____ my father and my mother.
10. Where's my blue pen?

    It's _____ your desk _____ that red book and those letters.

    And where's my red pencil?

    It's _____ your computer.

    And where are those new photographs?

    They're _____ your bed.

Lesson 37 Making a bookcase

做书架

I. Make sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句造句。

1. a. Look at Jack. *I'm looking at Jack.*
   b. Help the girl. _____
   c. Sit on the chair. _____
   d. Read your book. _____
   e. Drink your milk. _____
   f. Wash the dishes. _____
   g. Make your bed. _____
   h. Open the window. _____
   i. Sweep the floor. _____
   j. Do your homework. _____
2. a. Put on your coats. *We're putting on our coats.*
   b. Take off your shoes. _____
   c. Put your clothes in the wardrobe. _____
   d. Take out your books. _____
   e. Turn on the lights. _____
   f. Turn off the taps. _____
   g. Come into the kitchen. _____
   h. Clean your teeth. _____
   i. Go into the shop. _____
   j. Look at the boats. _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What are you going to do? (make a bookcase/paint it)

   I'm going to make a bookcase.

   Then I'm going to paint it.

2. What are you and Anna going to do? (cook a meal/eat it)

   We're going to cook a meal.

   Then we're going to eat it.

3. What are you going to do? (do my homework/read a magazine)

4. What are you and John going to do? (type some letters/empty the baskets)

5. What are you going to do? (sweep the floor/clean my father's car)

6. What are you and Louise going to do? (read our books/write some letters)

7. What are you going to do? (turn off the television/turn off the lights)

8. What are you going to do? (put my clothes in the wardrobe/shut the door)

_____

_____

Lesson 38 What are you going to do? What are you doing now?

你准备做什么？
你现在正在做什么？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What are you going to do? (I/drink tea)
   I'm going to drink tea.
2. What are you going to do? (we/wait for the bus)
   _____
3. What are you going to do? (I/turn on the television)
   _____
4. What are you going to do? (I/make a bookcase for my son)
   _____
5. What are you going to do? (we/do our homework)
   _____
6. What are you going to do? (I/read a magazine)
   _____
7. What are you going to do? (we/paint our doors)
   _____
8. What are you going to do? (we/walk across the street)
   _____

II. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Are you working now?

No, I'm not, and I'm not going to work.

b. Are you doing your homework now?

c. Are you dusting the bookcase now?

d. Are you cleaning your shoes now?

e. Are you putting on your tie now?

f. Are you reading a book now?

g. Are you cooking now?

h. Are you shaving now?

2. a. This window is dirty. (I/clean)

I'm going to clean it now.

b. The pencils are blunt. (I/sharpen)

c. The baskets are full. (we/empty)

d. Our books are closed. (we/open)

e. The desks and chairs are dusty. (we/dust)

f. Emma's bed is untidy. (I/make)

_____

g. I am cold. (I/put on my coat)

_____

h. We're thirsty. (we/drink tea)

_____

Lesson 39 Don't drop it!

别摔了！

I. Write the imperative sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句写出祈使句的肯定和否定形式。

1. a. Use a pen, not a pencil.

Use a pen, please. Don't use a pencil.

b. Open the window, not the door.

c. Walk along the road, not across the road.

d. Paint it green, not yellow.

e. Sit on my right, not on my left.

f. Wash your shirts, not your trousers.

g. Give it to Tim, not Tom.

h. Show him your passports, not your plane tickets.

i. Speak English, not Chinese.

j. Put it here, not there.

2. a. dishes/on shelf/in cupboard

Don't put the dishes on the shelf.

Put them in the cupboard.

b. your shoes/near bed/near door

c. your book/on dressing table/on desk

d. that rug/on chair/on floor

e. television/in the middle of the room/in corner

f. lamp/near bed/on desk

g. bottles/on floor/in cupboard

h. your clothes/on bed/in wardrobe

i. butter/on the refrigerator/in the refrigerator

j. newspapers/on television/on shelf

II. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. he/put away/ties

He's putting away his ties.

He's putting his ties away.

He's putting them away.

2. my son/put on/his trousers

3. we/write down/our names

4. she/take off/her hat

5. John/turn on/the stereo

6. my mother/turn off/the cooker

7. they/throw away/the dirty bottles

8. I/put on/my watch

Lesson 40 What are you going to do? I'm going to . . .

你准备做什么？
我准备……

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题。

1. What are you going to do with that hammer? (put it in the box)

   I'm going to put it in the box.

2. What are you going to do with this dollar? (buy some sweets)

   _____

3. What are you going to do with the knife? (sharpen my pencils)

   _____

4. What is he going to do with those books? (give them to his friends)

   _____

5. What is she going to do with her dirty dress? (wash it)

   _____

6. What is Peter going to do with the paint? (paint that cupboard)

   _____

7. What are they going to do with those bones? (give them to the dog)

_____

8. What is Mr. Smith going to do with that refrigerator? (put it in the kitchen)

_____

II. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. give/the old woman/some money

Please give the old woman some money.

Please give her some money.

Please give some money to the old woman.

Please give some money to her.

2. give/Jim/a pen

_____

_____

_____

_____

3. show/my son/your book

_____

_____

_____

_____

4. send/the children/some books

_____

_____

_____

_____

5. show/the Customs officer/your passport

6. send/your aunt/a letter

7. take/your friends/some flowers

8. give/the shopkeeper/ten dollars

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What are you going to give to your guests? (tea)

   I'm going to give tea to my guests.

   I'm going to give them tea.

2. What's he going to send to his parents? (a letter)

3. What are they going to show to you? (their new house)

_____

_____

4. What's he going to give to us? (some books)

_____

_____

5. What is Mrs. Smith going to take to her friend? (a picture)

_____

_____

6. What's she going to show to the tourists? (some beautiful carpets)

_____

_____

7. What are you going to send to your mother? (my photographs)

_____

_____

8. What are you going to give to your son? (some new clothes)

_____

_____

Lesson 41 Penny's bag

彭尼的提包

I. Match the phrases in Column A with the words in Column B. There may be repetitions. 在 B 栏中找出可与 A 栏中的短语搭配的词。有些词会重复使用。

A	B
1. a piece of	a. milk
2. a slice of	b. tobacco
3. a bar of	c. coffee
4. a bottle of	d. tea
5. a cup of	e. cake
6. a tin of	f. bread
7. a loaf of	g. water
8. a pound of	h. ink
9. a glass of	i. chocolate
10. a pint of	j. paper
	k. beer
	l. sugar

II. Choose the correct phrases in the box to complete the dialogues. 选择正确的短语完成下列对话。

a piece of paper	a bottle of ink
a tin of tobacco	half a pound of sugar
a bar of chocolate	a loaf of bread
a cup of tea	a bottle of milk

1. I'm going to write a letter. Is there any paper on the desk?

   Yes, there is.

   Give me *a piece of paper*, please.

2. They're hungry. Is there any bread in the refrigerator?

   Yes, there is.

   Give them _____, please.

3. We're going to cook a meal. Is there any sugar?

   Yes, there is.

   Give us _____, please.

4. We are thirsty. Is there any milk in the kitchen?

   Yes, there is.

   Give us _____, please.

5. The boy is crying. Is there any chocolate in the box?

   Yes, there is.

   Give him _____, please.

6. My son is going to do his homework. Is there any ink here?

   Yes, there is.

   Give him _____, please.

7. We want to smoke. Is there any tobacco in the box?

   Yes, there is.

   Give us _____, please.

8. She's thirsty. Is there any tea here?

   Yes, there is.

   Give her _____, please.

III. Fill in the blanks with "a", "an", "some" or "any". 用 a, an, some 或 any 填空。

1. Here is _____ cup. There is _____ water in the cup.

2. There is _____ pencil on the desk, but there isn't _____ paper there.
3. The cat is drinking _____ milk.
4. There is _____ orange and _____ apple in my bag.
5. Give me _____ piece of paper, _____ pen and _____ ink, please.
6. I haven't _____ coffee, but I have _____ tea. Would you like _____ tea?
7. There is _____ chalk in the box and _____ ink in the bottle, but there isn't _____ pen or _____ pencil.
8. I'm going to give her _____ flowers. She's not very well.

Lesson 42 Is there a ... in/on that ...?
Is there any ... in/on that ...?

在那个……中/上有一个……吗？
在那个……中/上有……吗？

I. Ask and answer questions, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息提问并回答。

1. There is an orange in that basket. (not banana)

Is there an orange in that basket?

Yes, there is.

Is there a banana in that basket, too?

No, there isn't. There isn't a banana there.

2. There is a map in that book. (not picture)

3. There is a cake on that plate. (not sandwich)

4. There is an egg in that tin. (not apple)

5. There is a shirt in the wardrobe. (not suit)

II. Ask and answer questions, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息提问并回答。

1. There is some sugar in that cup. (not tea)
   Is there any tea in that cup?
   No, there isn't. There is some sugar.
2. There is some milk in that glass. (not water)
3. There is some tomato juice in that bottle. (not orange juice)
4. There is some tea in that cup. (not coffee)
5. There is some butter in the cupboard. (not cheese)
6. There is some ink on that desk. (not paper)

Lesson 43 Hurry up!

快点！

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. pens on the table — *There are some pens on the table.*
   ink in the bottle — *There is some ink in the bottle.*
2. pencils on the desk — _____
   paper on the shelf — _____
3. cups in the cupboard — _____
   coffee in the cup — _____
4. knives in the box — _____
   cheese on the plate — _____
5. cigarettes in his pocket — _____
   tobacco in the tin — _____
6. glasses on the table — _____
   beer in the glass — _____
7. books in the bookcase — _____
   bread on the table — _____
8. eggs on the plate — _____
   tea in the teapot — _____

II. Ask and answer questions according to the example. 仿照例句提问并回答。

1. magazines on the shelf

   Are there any magazines on the shelf?

   No, there aren't any magazines on the shelf.

butter on the plate

Is there any butter on the plate?

No, there isn't any butter on the plate.

2. birds in the tree

paper on the desk

3. shoes under the bed

clothes on the bed

4. boys in the school

tea in the teapot

5. glasses on the table

water in the glass

6. kettles in the shop

milk in the bottle

III. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. two spoons on the plate

There are two spoons on the plate.

two cups of tea on the table

There are two cups of tea on the table.

2. three hundred pages in the book

two pieces of paper on the desk

3. twenty watches in the box

two pieces of chocolate in the box

4. five knives in the cupboard

two loaves of bread in the bag

5. six men in the office

twelve bars of chocolate on the table

6. three dogs in the garden

ten slices of bread on the plate

7. two mechanics in the room

_____

three bottles of beer on the table

_____

8. thirty boxes in the shop

_____

six hundred bars of soap in the boxes

_____

Lesson 44 Are there any . . . ?
Is there any . . . ?

有些……吗？
有些……吗？

I. Make dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词编写对话。

1. you/speak/English/French/German/Sam

Can you speak English?

Yes, I can.

Can you speak French?

No, I can't, but I can speak German.

Who can speak French?

Sam can speak French.

2. Ann/make/tea/bread/coffee/John

3. Mike/ride a bike/drive a car/ride a horse/my father

4. they/speak/Dutch/Japanese/Korean/Mary

5. you/see/any clouds in the sky/a bird/an aeroplane/he

6. John/write/his name/his address/his phone number/his brother

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition. 选择正确的介词填空。

1. A tall man is sitting _____ (between, in front of) me.

2. The boy is hiding _____ (on, behind) a tree.
3. There is a garden _____ (behind, between) the house.
4. The men are coming _____ (out of, into) the shop.
5. Look! The children are _____ (across, on) the bridge.
6. Some birds are flying _____ (on, over) the wall.
7. Two cats are running _____ (between, along) the wall.
8. There is a box _____ (over, on) the table.
9. There are two policemen _____ (before, in front of) that building.
10. Is there any water _____ (into, in) the kettle?

Lesson 45 The boss's letter

老板的信

I. Give short answers to the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句简短回答下列问题。

1. a. Can a dog swim? *Yes, it can.*
   b. Can you bring me some books? _____
   c. Can we fly to Beijing? _____
   d. Can she write English? _____
   e. Can he cook? _____
   f. Can you see China on the map? _____
   g. Can Bob go to the United States? _____
   h. Can I turn off the television? _____
   i. Can Linda play football? _____
   j. Can you read English? _____
2. a. Can a cat swim? *No, it can't.*
   b. Can we eat grass? _____
   c. Can birds swim under water? _____
   d. Can you buy a car now? _____
   e. Can your mother make cakes? _____
   f. Can your son cook? _____
   g. Can we make a cupboard? _____
   h. Can you answer the questions? _____
   i. Can he type? _____
   j. Can she dance? _____

3. a. Who can cut my hair? (the hairdresser)

The hairdresser can .

b. Who can speak Korean? (I)

c. Who can lift this stereo? (my brother)

d. Who can read Japanese? (David)

e. Who can speak German? (his friends)

f. Who can translate this? (Xiao Li)

g. Who can jump across the river? (he)

h. Who can make biscuits? (her mother)

i. Who can answer this question? (you)

j. Who can paint the walls for us? (the men)

II. Write the sentences in a more polite way, using "Can you ..." according to the example. 仿照例句用 **Can you ...** 的句型改写句子，使句子的表达更有礼貌。

1. Shut the windows!

Can you shut the windows , please?

2. Open the door!

3. Type these letters!

4. Turn off the light!

_____

5. Make some cakes!

_____

6. Give me the teapot!

_____

7. Show me the letter!

_____

8. Turn on the tap!

_____

9. Wash the dishes!

_____

10. Take off your shoes!

_____

Lesson 46 Can you . . . ?

你能……吗？

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. I/speak English/not German
   I can speak English but I can't speak German.
2. William/write English/not Chinese
   _____
3. Sophie/type/not make tea
   _____
4. I/climb up that tree/not jump off it
   _____
5. a dog/swim/not climb up a tree
   _____
6. she/play basketball/not football
   _____
7. they/speak Japanese/not write it
   _____
8. he/buy a small house/not a big one
   _____
9. you/lift this light box/not that heavy one
   _____
10. I/read your handwriting/not Bob's handwriting
    _____

II. Answer the questions in full sentences according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. What language can you speak? (English)
   I/We can speak English.
2. What language can Ken speak? (French)

   _____
3. Which box can Mary lift, this one or that one? (this one)

   _____
4. Which book can you read, the thick one or the thin one? (the thick one)

   _____
5. What languages can Kathy speak? (Japanese and Korean)

   _____
6. What can you make, bread or cakes? (bread)

   _____
7. Where can he teach, in a school or in a university? (in a university)

   _____
8. Which word can you spell, "pen" or "book"? (the two words)

   _____

Lesson 47 A cup of coffee

一杯咖啡

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Do you want any apples? (a pound)

Yes, I do. Give me a pound of apples, please.

b. Do you want any pencils? (three)

c. Do you want any eggs? (twelve)

d. Do you want any glasses? (one)

e. Do you want any boxes? (two)

f. Do you want any chocolate? (a large bar)

g. Do you want any ice creams? (one)

2. a. Do you want any coffee?

No, I don't. I don't like coffee.

b. Do you want any whisky?

c. Do you want any cheese?

d. Do you want any bread?

_____

e. Do you want any milk?

_____

f. Do you want any honey?

_____

g. Do you want any beer?

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do you want a banana? (yes)

Yes, please. I like bananas.

2. Do you want any butter? (no/cheese)

No, thank you, but I want some cheese.

3. Do you want a cup of tea? (yes)

_____

4. Do you want any wine? (no/beer)

_____

5. Do you want any biscuits? (yes)

_____

6. Do you want a cup of black coffee? (yes)

_____

7. Do you want any sugar? (no/honey)

_____

8. Do you want any water? (no/coffee)

_____

9. Do you want any fruit? (no/jam)

_____

10. Do you want a glass of wine? (yes)

_____

III. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do you like cheese on your bread? (butter)

   No, I don't. But I like butter on my bread.

2. Do you like cream in your coffee? (milk)

   _____

3. Do you like ice in your whisky? (in beer)

   _____

4. Do you like egg on your bread? (jam)

   _____

5. Do you like honey in your milk? (sugar)

   _____

6. Do you like pure milk in an ice cream? (chocolate)

   _____

7. Do you like sugar in your tea? (lemon)

   _____

8. Do you like jam on your bread? (cheese)

   _____

9. Do you like chocolate in a cake? (fruit)

   _____

10. Do you like sugar in your soup? (salt)

    _____

Lesson 48 Do you like . . . ?
Do you want . . . ?

你喜欢……吗？
你想要……吗？

I. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. There's a small apple on the plate. (big)
   I don't want a small one. I want a big one.
2. There are some red apples in the basket. (green)
   I don't want any red ones. I want some green ones.
3. This ice cream is for you. (that)
   _____
4. Here's a cup of coffee for you. (a cup of tea)
   _____
5. I'm going to give you an old handbag. (new)
   _____
6. There are some short pencils in the box. (long)
   _____
7. Here are two blue hats. (red)
   _____
8. There are some biscuits in the cupboard. (a cake)
   _____
9. Here's a cup. (a glass)
   _____

10. I'm going to buy you a bottle of beer. (wine)

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do you like cheese and butter?

   I like cheese, but I don't like butter.

2. Do you like green tea and black tea?

   _____

3. Do you like red wine and white wine?

   _____

4. Do you like honey and jam?

   _____

5. Do you like white clothes and black clothes?

   _____

6. Do you like oranges and bananas?

   _____

7. Do you like American cars and Korean cars?

   _____

8. Do you like English and German?

   _____

9. Do you like Mercedes and Ford?

   _____

10. Do you like cakes and biscuits?

    _____

Lesson 49 At the butcher's

在肉店

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Does he like steak? (some pieces)

Yes, he does. He wants some pieces of steak.

b. Does he like beef? (two pounds)

_____

c. Does your son like bread? (three loaves)

_____

d. Does Linda like wine? (a bottle)

_____

e. Does Ann like grapes? (a pound)

_____

f. Does your daughter like tomatoes? (a pound)

_____

g. Does your father like tobacco? (two tins)

_____

2. a. Does he want any cabbages?

No, he doesn't. He doesn't like cabbages.

b. Does your wife want any lamb?

_____

c. Does Mary want any lettuces?

_____

d. Does your son want any coffee?

_____

e. Does your sister want any beans?

_____

f. Does Tom want any mince?

_____

g. Does he want any butter?

_____

II. Ask questions for the answers according to the example. You need to make changes in the questions. 仿照例句根据答案提问，并做必要的改变。

1. *Does he like chicken?*
   No, he doesn't. He doesn't like chicken.
   What about beef?
   No, he doesn't like beef, either.
2. _____
   No, she doesn't. She doesn't like garden beans.
   _____
   No, she doesn't like cabbages, either.
3. _____
   No, she doesn't. She doesn't like big potatoes.
   _____
   No, she doesn't like cheese, either.
4. _____
   No, he doesn't. He doesn't like butter.
   _____
   No, he doesn't like jam, either.
5. _____
   No, she doesn't. She doesn't like lamb.

_____

No, she doesn't like steak, either.

6. _____

No, he doesn't. He doesn't like eggs.

_____

No, he doesn't like grapes, either.

III. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. he/some oranges/some peaches

He wants some oranges, and he wants some peaches, too.

2. that woman/a pound of sugar/a jar of honey

_____

3. the old man/two pounds of peas/six tomatoes

_____

4. Tony/two loaves of bread/a pound of cheese

_____

5. his daughter/two pieces of steak/a bottle of juice

_____

6. the little girl/three bars of chocolate/a bottle of milk

_____

7. he/two slices of bread/a cup of tea

_____

8. Marie/two pounds of choice tomatoes/three fresh lettuces

_____

Lesson 50 He likes . . .
But he doesn't like . . .

他喜欢……
但是他不喜欢……

I. Combine each pair of sentences according to the example. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. He wants some apples. /He doesn't want any oranges.
   He wants some apples, but he doesn't want any oranges.
2. He likes butter. /He doesn't like cheese.
   _____
3. Emma likes honey. /She doesn't like sugar.
   _____
4. John likes grapes. /He doesn't like apples.
   _____
5. Mrs. Bird wants two fresh lettuces. /She doesn't want any garden peas.
   _____
6. Her husband likes coffee. /He doesn't like milk.
   _____
7. She wants some jam. /She doesn't want any butter.
   _____
8. Sophie wants some bread. /She doesn't want any cakes.
   _____

9. That man wants some eggs. /He doesn't want any mince.

_____

10. The girl likes peaches. /She doesn't like bananas.

_____

11. His son likes beef. /He doesn't like lamb.

_____

12. The old woman wants some new potatoes. /She doesn't want any fresh cabbages.

_____

II. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. you/pears/peaches/my son

Do you like pears or peaches?

I like pears, but my son doesn't. He likes peaches.

2. he/jam/honey/his brother

_____

_____

3. she/grapes/bananas/her husband

_____

_____

4. you/tea/coffee/Jane

_____

_____

5. your father/beans/peas/my mother

_____

_____

6. you/beef/lamb/Helen

_____

_____

7. your brother/wine/whisky/his wife

_____

_____

8. Sam/tomatoes/potatoes/Tim

_____

_____

Lesson 51 A pleasant climate

宜人的气候

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. When does the sun shine every day? (in July and August)
   The sun shines every day in July and August.
2. When is it always windy? (in winter and early spring)
   _____
3. When does spring come? (in March)
   _____
4. When does it rain sometimes? (in April and November)
   _____
5. When is it often sunny? (in autumn)
   _____
6. When is it always warm? (in May and October)
   _____
7. When does it often snow? (in December and January)
   _____
8. When is it sometimes warm? (in winter)
   _____
9. When is the climate often pleasant? (in May, June and October)
   _____
10. When is it always very cold? (in December, January and

February)

_____

II. Add the frequency adverbs given to the sentences and rewrite them. 用所给频率副词改写下列句子。

1. It's hot in August. (always)

_____

2. He's late for class. (sometimes)

_____

3. It's very pleasant here. (always)

_____

4. The students are hard-working. (always)

_____

5. It's windy in December and January. (often)

_____

6. The policemen are very tired. (often)

_____

7. Students are lazy. (sometimes)

_____

8. The weather is bad here in winter. (always)

_____

9. We're busy in spring. (often)

_____

10. The steak in this shop is good. (always)

_____

III. Answer the questions according to the real situation in your part of China. 根据当地的实际情况回答下列问题。

1. Where are you from?

_____

2. What's the climate like in your part of China?

_____

3. Does spring usually come in May?

_____

4. What's the weather like in summer? What about autumn?

_____

5. What's the weather like in January?

_____

6. Does it rain every day in autumn?

_____

7. Does the sun shine every day in spring?

_____

8. Does it always snow in December?

_____

9. Do you like spring and summer?

_____

10. What's the weather like today?

_____

Lesson 52 What nationality are they? Where do they come from?

他们是哪国人？
他们来自哪个国家？

I. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of "speak", "come" and "be". 用 speak, come 和 be 的正确形式填空。

1. Mr. Brown _____ English; he _____ from England. He _____ English; his language _____ English.
2. Mrs. Longhi _____ Italian; she _____ from Italy. She _____ Italian; her language _____ Italian.
3. _____ you Italian?
   No, I _____ not. I _____ Mexican; I _____ from Mexico. I _____ Spanish; my language _____ Spanish.
4. What nationality _____ you? _____ you Spanish, too?
   No, I _____ not Spanish. I _____ Swedish; I _____ from Sweden. I _____ Swedish; my language _____ Swedish.
5. What about you, Inge and Anna?
   We _____ Danish; we _____ from Denmark. We _____ Danish; our language _____ Danish.

6. Where _____ they _____ from?
   They _____ from Holland; they _____ Dutch.
   They _____ Dutch; their language _____ Dutch.
7. _____ you _____ from France?
   Yes, we do. We _____ from Paris, France. We _____ French. We _____ French; our language _____ French.
8. My friend, Hans _____ German; he _____ from Germany. He _____ German; his language _____ German.
9. Kathy _____ American; she _____ from the United States. She _____ English; her language _____ English.
10. Her brother _____ Norwegian; he _____ from Norway. He _____ Norwegian; his language _____ Norwegian.

II. Translate the sentences into English. 将下列句子译成英文。

1. 一年有四季——春、夏、秋、冬，每个季节是三个月。
   _____
2. 一年有 12 个月，一个月有 30 天或 31 天。
   _____
3. 一年有 365 天。
   _____
4. 这里春天很暖和，时而下点雨。
   _____
5. 夏天特别热，天天都是大晴天。
   _____

6. 秋天时常刮风，有时下雨。

_____

7. 冬天总是很冷，12 月份和 1 月份多雪。

_____

8. 我们这个城市的气候非常宜人。

_____

Lesson 53 An interesting climate

有趣的气候

I. Add the frequency adverbs given to the sentences and rewrite them. 用所给频率副词改写下列句子。

1. Mrs. Smith goes to the shops. (every day)

_____

2. John cleans his teeth. (every day)

_____

3. My son rides a bike to school, but he goes by bus. (often/sometimes)

_____

4. It's mild in the North. (sometimes)

_____

5. You come to class very early. (always)

_____

6. The students ask interesting questions. (often)

_____

7. Mrs. Bird cooks meals, and her husband does, too. (often/sometimes)

_____

8. It rains in spring, but it rains in autumn, too. (sometimes/often)

_____

9. The baby next door cries. (every day)

_____

10. She likes books, and she reads at home. (always/often)

_____

II. Turn the statements into negatives according to the example.
仿照例句将下列肯定句改为否定句。

1. My children often eat lamb.
   My children don't often eat lamb.
2. The sun shines every day in summer.

   _____
3. It's always windy in the South.

   _____
4. He always speaks English.

   _____
5. It's always pleasant here in spring.

   _____
6. I often buy fresh fruit.

   _____
7. They work hard every day.

   _____
8. She often does her homework in her bedroom.

   _____
9. You always like tomatoes.

   _____
10. His father always washes the dishes.

    _____
11. It's often windy here.

    _____
12. It's always wet in Qingdao.

    _____

III. Answer the questions, using the words given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Which season do you like best? (spring)
   I like spring best.
2. Which language does he like best? (Chinese)
   _____
3. Which month does your brother like best? (May)
   _____
4. Which book does Helen like best? (*New Concept English*)
   _____
5. Which teacher do you like best? (our English teacher)
   _____
6. Which fruit does your son like best? (peaches)
   _____
7. Which umbrella does the girl like best? (the red one)
   _____
8. Which colour does the woman like best? (green)
   _____
9. Which country do they like best? (Greece)
   _____
10. Which football team do you like best? (the Brazilian team)
    _____

Lesson 54 What nationality are they? Where do they come from?

他们是哪国人？他们来自哪个国家？

I. Answer the questions, using the words given according to the examples. You may make changes where necessary. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题，并做必要的改变。

1. a. Are you Greek or Italian? (Greek)

I'm Greek. I come from Greece.

b. Is Sophie English or French? (French)

_____

c. Do you come from Norway or Sweden? (Norway)

_____

d. Does Hans come from Spain or Germany? (Germany)

_____

e. Are the tourists Russian or Dutch? (Russian)

_____

f. Does John come from Finland or Canada? (Canada)

_____

g. Are you Australian or Austrian? (Australian)

_____

h. Is your father Polish or Turkish? (Turkish)

_____

i. Does the girl come from Japan or Korea? (Japan)

_____

j. Does the engineer come from Thailand or India? (Thailand)

_____

2. a. Where do you come from? (China)

I come from China.

b. Where does your friend come from? (Japan)

_____

c. Where do they come from? (Poland)

_____

d. Where does your mother come from? (Australia)

_____

e. Where does Marie come from? (Turkey)

_____

f. Where does Dave come from? (Austria)

_____

g. Where do these tourists come from? (India)

_____

h. Where does that man come from? (Nigeria)

_____

i. Where does that old woman come from? (Brazil)

_____

j. Where do those young men come from? (England)

_____

II. Write the third person singular form of the verbs. 写出下列动词的第三人称单数形式。

1. teach _____ 2. give _____

3. play _____
4. live _____
5. shine _____
6. rise _____
7. go _____
8. watch _____
9. look _____
10. come _____
11. climb _____
12. do _____
13. snow _____
14. walk _____
15. like _____
16. want _____
17. see _____
18. take _____

Lesson 55 The Sawyer family

索耶一家人

I. Fill in the blanks with "the" where necessary. 在必要的空白处填上 **the**。

1. Miss Tan goes to _____ work by car every day. She arrives at _____ office at eight in _____ morning, and she comes home late in _____ evening.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Smith usually stay at _____ home in _____ afternoon.
3. That new student is Austrian. He comes from _____ Austria.
4. They often come home late at _____ night.
5. What's _____ climate like in your country?
   It's interesting. It's often cold in _____ North and windy in _____ East.
6. Do you often eat _____ lamb?
   No, I don't. I don't like _____ lamb. But I like _____ beef.
7. To tell you _____ truth, Mr. James doesn't shave every day.
8. Our cat drinks _____ milk, but it doesn't drink _____ water.
9. Can you give me a hammer, please?
   Which one? This small one?
   No, not _____ small one. _____ big one.

10. _____ Sawyers usually watch _____ television every evening.

II. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the verb given. 用所给动词的正确形式填空。

Tim's Day

Tim _____ (wake) up at eight o'clock in the morning, and _____ (get) up at half past eight. He _____ (wash) his face and hands and _____ (clean) his teeth. Then he _____ (go) downstairs for breakfast. He _____ (eat) two eggs and some bread and butter, and he _____ (drink) two or three cups of coffee.

After breakfast he _____ (walk) to Mr. Scott's house. He _____ (be) often late. He _____ (show) Mr. Scott his homework, and there _____ (be) often mistakes in it.

For lunch at noon, he usually _____ (eat) three pieces of steak and tomatoes or beans. After lunch he always _____ (drink) a cup of tea with sugar in it. He sometimes _____ (sit) in an armchair and _____ (read) a newspaper, and sometimes, but not often, he _____ (do) some work for Mr. Scott.

For supper in the evening, he _____ (eat) some slices of bread, butter, honey and cakes. Then he _____ (watch) television or _____ (talk) to friends.

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Do you usually go to school by bus or by bike? (by bike)

I usually go to school by bike.

2. Do your classmates often ask questions in class or after class? (after class)

_____

3. Are your teachers always busy or only sometimes? (always)

_____

4. Does your father usually go to work early or late? (early)

_____

5. Does your friend watch television or do his homework in the evening? (do his homework)

_____

6. Does your mother go to the shops every day or every week? (every day)

_____

7. Do you often play basketball or football in the afternoon? (football)

_____

8. Does she usually go to school in the morning or in the afternoon? (in the morning)

_____

9. Does Jane go to bed early or late every evening? (early)

_____

10. Do you always go out with friends or stay at home in the evening? (stay at home)

_____

Lesson 56 What do they usually do?

他们通常做什么？

I. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the verb given. 用所给动词的正确形式填空。

1. John _____ (live) in a small city. He _____ (be) a student. He _____ (get) up early in the morning every day, at seven o'clock, and _____ (go) to school by bus. He _____ (like) English best. He _____ (play) football at school. He _____ (get) home at four o'clock in the afternoon. Then he _____ (do) his homework before dinner, and _____ (watch) television after dinner in the evening. He usually _____ (go) to bed at nine o'clock.
2. Mrs. Scott and her sister Emma _____ (be) teachers. They _____ (teach) in the same school. They _____ (go) to work by car. They _____ (leave) home at seven thirty in the morning, and _____ (come) back home at four in the afternoon. In the evening, they usually _____ (read) books, but sometimes they _____ (listen) to the stereo. They _____ (like) their jobs.

II. Answer the questions about you. 根据你的情况回答下列问题。

1. Where do you come from?

_____

2. Where do you live?

_____

3. What do you usually do in the morning?

_____

4. Who often cooks meals in your family?

_____

5. Do you often help your mother? What do you usually do?

_____

6. Who often makes the beds, cleans the rooms and washes the dishes?

_____

7. What do you usually eat for lunch?

_____

8. What do you often do in the afternoon? What about in the evening?

_____

9. Do you speak and listen to English every day?

_____

10. Which season(s) do you like best?

_____

Lesson 57 An unusual day

很不平常的一天

I. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. John/often play football/basketball now
   John often plays football, but he is playing basketball now.
2. the boys/often swim in the sea in summer/in the river today
   _____
3. Mary/often buy sugar/some honey at the moment
   _____
4. my sister/watch television every evening/listen to her stereo this evening
   _____
5. our teacher/often stand in front of the blackboard/sit at the desk today
   _____
6. we/often walk along the banks of the river/in the park today
   _____
7. he/usually arrive home early/come home late this afternoon
   _____
8. Ken and Ann/often speak English/French now
   _____
9. I/often drink coffee/tea at the moment
   _____

10. Sam/usually do his homework in school/at home today

_____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Is your daughter reading at the moment? (sleep)

No, she isn't. She's sleeping.

Does she usually sleep in the afternoon? (at night)

No, she doesn't. She usually sleeps at night.

b. Are the children playing in the garden this morning? (do their homework)

_____

Do they often do their homework in the morning? (in the afternoon)

_____

c. Are you cooking now? (eat my lunch)

_____

Do you usually eat your lunch at this time every day? (early in the afternoon)

_____

d. Is Tom going to school by bike today? (on foot)

_____

Does he often go to school on foot? (by car)

_____

e. Is it raining now? (snow)

_____

Does it usually snow in February? (January)

_____

2. a. Is Mrs. Smith going to the shops this afternoon? (talk to her friends)

No, she isn't. She's talking to her friends.

Does she usually see her friends in the afternoon? (read magazines at home)

No, she doesn't. She usually reads magazines at home in the afternoon.

b. Are you watching television now? (play games)

Do you often play games in the evening? (watch television)

c. Is Helen working at the moment? (drink tea)

Does she drink tea at this time every day? (drink coffee)

d. Is Sam eating his breakfast now? (shave)

Does he usually shave at this time in the morning? (listen to the radio)

e. Are they cleaning the classroom windows now? (clean the doors)

Do they clean the doors every day? (wash the floor)

Lesson 58 What's the time?

几点钟？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. What are you doing now? (read a newspaper)

I'm reading a newspaper.

Do you read a newspaper every day? (often)

No, I don't read a newspaper every day, but I often read a newspaper.

b. What are you doing now? (write a letter to my mother)

Do you write home every week? (sometimes)

c. What is she doing now? (clean her shoes)

Does she clean her shoes every day? (every week)

d. What is your sister doing now? (sweep the floor)

Does she often sweep the floor? (sometimes)

e. What are the students doing now? (watch television)

Do they always watch television at night? (sometimes)

_____

2. a. What is the postman doing now? (deliver letters)

He is delivering letters.

Does he often deliver letters at eight o'clock in the morning? (often at eight thirty)

No, he doesn't. He often delivers letters at eight thirty in the morning.

b. What is your husband doing now? (take our son to school)

_____

Does he take your son to school at this time every morning? (usually at seven)

_____

c. What are you doing now? (wait for a bus)

_____

Do you usually wait for a bus at eight o'clock? (usually at seven thirty)

_____

d. What are the children doing now? (do their homework)

_____

Do they always do their homework in the afternoon? (usually in the evening)

_____

e. What is the keyboard operator doing now? (type letters)

_____

Does he often type letters at noon? (usually at nine in the morning)

_____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. six/our friends/come and see us
   What's the time?
   It's six o'clock. Our friends usually come and see us at six.
2. two/we/go to work
   What's the time?
   _____
3. five/you/cook a meal
   What's the time?
   _____
4. four/the children/come home from school
   What's the time?
   _____
5. ten/she/go to bed
   What's the time?
   _____
6. eight/I/do my homework
   What's the time?
   _____
7. nine/he/read a newspaper
   What's the time?
   _____
8. eleven/I/go to the shops
   What's the time?
   _____
9. one/she/cook a meal
   What's the time?
   _____

10. four/we/drink tea

What's the time?

_____

Lesson 59 Is that all?

就这些吗？

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Do you have a dog and a cat?
   I have a dog, but I don't have a cat.
   b. Do you have a pen and a pencil?
   _____
   c. Do you have a bike and a car?
   _____
   d. Do you have an envelope and a pad of paper?
   _____
   e. Do you have an egg and a spoon?
   _____
   f. Do you have a bottle of beer and a glass?
   _____
   g. Do you have an apple and an orange?
   _____

2. a. Do they have any tables and chairs?
   They have some tables, but they don't have any chairs.
   b. Do they have any boxes and baskets?
   _____
   c. Do they have any brothers and sisters?
   _____
   d. Do they have any cups and saucers?
   _____

e. Do they have any hats and coats?

_____

f. Do they have any peaches and pears?

_____

g. Do they have any spoons and forks?

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do you have any bread and butter?

We have some bread, but we don't have any butter.

2. Do you have any milk and sugar?

_____

3. Do you have any writing paper and ink?

_____

4. Do you have any soap and water?

_____

5. Do you have any beef and lamb?

_____

6. Do you have any jam and honey?

_____

7. Do you have any whisky and wine?

_____

8. Do you have any chalk and glue?

_____

9. Do you have any cheese and beer?

_____

10. Do you have any mince and steak?

_____

III. Give short answers to the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句简短回答下列问题。

1. a. Do you have a bike? *Yes, I do.*
   b. Do they have a car? _____
   c. Do we have any wine? _____
   d. Do you have any steak? _____
   e. Do they have a television? _____
   f. Do you have any tobacco? _____
   g. Do we have any time? _____
2. a. Do you have an aeroplane? *No, I/we don't.*
   b. Do you have any eggs? _____
   c. Do we have any time? _____
   d. Do they have any children? _____
   e. Do they have a house? _____
   f. Do you have a French friend? _____
   g. Do you have any envelopes? _____

Lesson 60 What's the time?

几点钟?

I. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. a. chalk/a box of white chalk

Do you have any chalk?

Yes, I do. I have a box of white chalk.

b. wine/a glass of red wine

c. whisky/a bottle of Scotch whisky

d. soap/two bars of soap

e. bread/two loaves of bread

f. ink/a bottle of black ink

2. a. large pads of paper/small ones

Do they have any large pads of paper?

No, they don't have any large ones. They only have small ones.

b. German cars/Japanese ones

c. big potatoes/small ones

d. red apples/green ones

e. long spoons/short ones

f. new plates/old ones

II. Make dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词编写对话。

1. eleven/cook lunch/potatoes

What's the time?

It's eleven o'clock.

I'm going to cook lunch. Do we have any potatoes?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

2. four/wash some clothes/soap

3. seven/do my homework/blue ink

4. six/eat my breakfast/bread and milk

5. eight/drink a glass of beer/clean glasses

6. nine/write some letters/writing paper and envelopes

Lesson 61　A bad cold

重感冒

I. Answer the questions, using the words given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Does he have a car? (small)

Yes, he does. He has a small car.

b. Does Dave have a glass? (clean)

c. Does she have a radio? (new)

d. Does Tim have an umbrella? (black)

e. Does Helen have an orange? (big)

2. a. Does she have a pen? (pencil)

No, she doesn't. She only has a pencil.

b. Does John have a blue tie? (red tie)

c. Does Mary have a house? (room)

d. Does Mike have a spoon? (fork)

e. Does he have a television? (radio)

II. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. a. he/cups/plates

Does he have any cups and plates?

He has some cups, but he doesn't have any plates.

b. Linda/pencils/pens

c. George/books/pads of paper

d. the girl/oranges/peaches

e. the man/newspapers/magazines

2. a. our teacher/chalk/glue

Does our teacher have any chalk and glue?

She has some chalk, but she doesn't have any glue.

b. he/paper/ink

c. she/bread/jam

d. Dave/tea/sugar

III. Give correct replies to the sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词写出下列句子的对应句。

1. I have a bad headache. (take two aspirins)
   You must take two aspirins.
2. She has measles. (stay at home)
   _____
3. She has a toothache. (see a dentist)
   _____
4. My son has flu. (take some medicine)
   _____
5. Bob has a temperature. (stay in bed)
   _____
6. My sister has mumps. (you/take her to a doctor)
   _____
7. He has a bad stomachache. (you/call the doctor)
   _____
8. I have a bad cold. (drink more water)
   _____
9. He has an earache. (see a doctor)
   _____
10. I have a bad cough. (take some medicine)
    _____

IV. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Why is he late? (ill)
   Because he is ill.
2. Why is she eating a big meal? (hungry)
   _____

3. Why is she crying? (want an ice cream)

_____

4. Why must she call the doctor? (have measles)

_____

5. Why does Jane study English? (like English)

_____

6. Why are you going to bed so early? (tired)

_____

7. Why must they go home? (it/late)

_____

8. Why are you taking aspirins? (have a headache)

_____

Lesson 62 What's the matter with them? What must they do?

他们怎么啦？
他们该怎么办？

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. you/tell the truth/lies

You must always tell the truth. You mustn't tell lies.

2. I/be early for school/late

3. we/drink clean water/dirty water

4. he/put on a clean shirt/dirty one

5. she/drink milk/beer

6. you/go out in the fresh air/stay at home

7. they/speak English/Chinese

8. we/remember the telephone number/forget it

9. you/study first/watch television after school

10. the children/play in the garden/on the banks of a river

_____

II. Give short answers to the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句简短回答下列问题。

1. Must a woman have new clothes? (yes)
   Yes, she must.
2. Must I finish this homework before the lesson? (yes)

   _____
3. Must he do all the work today? (yes)

   _____
4. Must you go now? It's only eight o'clock. (yes)

   _____
5. Must I type the letter now? (yes)

   _____
6. Must she stay in bed? (no)
   No, she mustn't.
7. Must they go to bed late? (no)

   _____
8. Must we tell him the news? (no)

   _____
9. Must I walk across the street? (no)

   _____
10. Must he take an aspirin? (no)

    _____

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What's the matter with Bob? He looks ill. (have a cold)
   He has a cold.

2. What's the matter with you? (have a bad headache)

_____

3. What's the matter with our teacher? (feel ill)

_____

4. What's the matter with your son? (have a temperature)

_____

5. What's the matter with Susan? (have a bad toothache)

_____

6. What's the matter with them? (have mumps)

_____

7. What's the matter with you? (have a stomachache)

_____

8. What's the matter with the baby? (be thirsty)

_____

9. What's the matter with John? (have measles)

_____

10. What's the matter with your sister? (have an earache)

_____

Lesson 63 Thank you, doctor.

谢谢你，医生。

I. Ask questions according to the example. 仿照例句提问。

1. park my car here

   Can I park my car here?

2. use your pencil

   _____

3. use your telephone

   _____

4. sit here

   _____

5. borrow your bike

   _____

6. come to your house

   _____

7. use a dictionary in the exam

   _____

8. stay in bed today

   _____

9. look at your new dress

   _____

10. ask you a question

    _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. How long must he stay in bed? (a week)
   He must stay in bed for a week.
2. How long must I take the medicine? (three days)
3. How long must you play the piano? (about an hour every day)
4. How long must she work? (eight hours every day)
5. How long must I stay in hospital? (about two weeks)
6. How long can I use your bike? (two weeks)
   You can use my bike for two weeks.
7. How long can you live here? (about three months)
8. How long can he stay with his grandmother? (about a month)
9. How long can students keep books from the library? (two months)
10. How long can Mary play in the garden? (about two hours)

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Why mustn't he open the window? (have a bad cold)
   Because he has a bad cold.

2. Why mustn't she go to school today? (have measles)

_____

3. Why mustn't I swim in the river? (have an earache)

_____

4. Why mustn't he eat an ice cream? (have a toothache)

_____

5. Why mustn't I take off my coat? (have flu)

_____

6. Why mustn't they go out? (have mumps)

_____

7. Why mustn't he get up? (have a temperature)

_____

8. Why mustn't she drink cold water? (have a stomachache)

_____

9. Why mustn't he smoke? (have a bad cough)

_____

10. Why mustn't she read a book? (have a headache)

_____

Lesson 64 Don't . . . !
You mustn't . . . !

不要……！
你不应该……！

I. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Don't put the glasses on the refrigerator. Put them on the table.

   You mustn't put the glasses on the refrigerator. You must put them on the table.

2. Don't put the dishes here. Put them on the shelf.

   _____

3. Don't go to school by bike today. Go to school by bus.

   _____

4. Don't eat meat. Eat fresh fruit.

   _____

5. Don't look at your books. Look at the blackboard, please.

   _____

6. Don't watch television. Do your homework.

   _____

7. Don't drive so quickly. Drive slowly.

   _____

8. Don't talk in the library. Read your books.

   _____

9. Don't see a dentist. See a doctor.

_____

10. Don't play with matches. Play in the garden.

_____

II. Give correct replies to the sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词写出下列句子的对应句。

1. I don't feel well. (stay at home/today)
   I don't feel well, so I'm staying at home today.
2. My son has a temperature. (must/take him to the doctor's)

   _____
3. It's raining very hard. (I/go to work by taxi)

   _____
4. He feels cold. (must/put on more clothes)

   _____
5. I must catch the train. (taxi driver/drive quickly)

   _____
6. It's always warm in Greece in autumn. (tourists/often go there then)

   _____
7. The lettuces are not fresh today. (I/not want them)

   _____
8. His car is in the garage today. (go to work by bus)

   _____

Lesson 65 Not a baby

不是一个孩子

I. Fill in the blanks with reflexive pronouns. 用反身代词填空。

1. Jane and Jack are enjoying _____ at the party.
2. Are you having a good time?
   Yes, I'm enjoying _____.
3. That knife is very sharp. Don't cut _____!
4. This mirror is very dirty. I can't see _____ in it.
5. Please be careful. Don't hurt _____ with that knife.
6. Oh, look! He's going to cut _____!
7. The cat is washing _____ in the garden.
8. She can't see _____ in the mirror. It is high on the wall.
9. Is Mary enjoying _____?
   Yes, she is.
10. What's he doing?
    He's looking at _____ in the mirror.

II. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. I/do my homework/seven thirty/evening
   I usually do my homework at seven thirty in the evening, but this evening I'm not going to.
2. Linda/get up/six/morning
   _____

3. he/go to bed/ten/night

4. they/walk along the beach/six thirty/morning

5. we/eat our lunch/noon every day

6. mother/cook a meal/five/afternoon

7. they/play basketball/four/afternoon

8. he/go to work/twenty to eight/morning

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. How old are you? (twelve)

I'm twelve years old.

What can you do at twelve? (sweep the floor)

I can sweep the floor.

2. How old are you? (six)

What can you do at six? (go to school)

3. How old are you? (fifteen)

_____

What can you do at fifteen? (wash my clothes)

_____

4. How old are you? (eighteen)

_____

What can you do at eighteen? (go to work)

_____

5. How old are you? (sixteen)

_____

What can you do at sixteen? (cook)

_____

6. How old are you? (seventeen)

_____

What can you do at seventeen? (type)

_____

7. How old are you? (twenty-four)

_____

What can you do at twenty-four? (drive a car)

_____

8. How old are you? (thirty)

_____

What can you do at thirty? (teach English)

_____

Lesson 66 What's the time?

几点钟？

I. Answer the questions, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息回答下列问题。

1. When's your birthday? (5 February)
   It's February 5th.
2. When's our National Day? (1 October)
3. When's New Year's Day? (1 January)
4. When's Women's Day? (8 March)
5. When's Labour Day? (1 May)
6. When's Christmas Day? (25 December)
7. When's your mother's birthday? (6 July)
8. When's William's birthday? (15 August)
9. When's your sister's birthday? (25 November)
10. When's Children's Day? (1 June)

II. Tell the time in another way according to the example. 仿照例句用另一种方式报时。

1. What's the time?
   It's half past four.
   It's four thirty.

2. What's the time?
   It's twenty to four.
   _____

3. What's the time?
   It's twenty-five to three.
   _____

4. What's the time?
   It's a quarter to five.
   _____

5. What's the time?
   It's ten to twelve.
   _____

6. What's the time?
   It's a quarter past one.
   _____

7. What's the time?
   It's five to eleven.
   _____

8. What's the time?
   It's twenty-five past eight.
   _____

III. Fill in the blanks with "at", "in" or "on". 用 at, in 或 on 填空。

1. It's always warm here _____ spring and autumn.
2. Our holiday starts _____ July 8th.
3. I'm going to buy a bike _____ July.
4. She's going to meet him _____ ten past six.
5. It often snows in the North _____ December.
6. You must be at home _____ ten o'clock!
7. We're going to have a party _____ Saturday.
8. We're going to eat lunch _____ noon.
9. They usually do their homework _____ eight o'clock _____ night.
10. We go to work _____ seven thirty _____ the morning, and arrive home _____ five _____ the afternoon.

Lesson 67 The weekend

周末

I. Fill in the blanks with "was" or "were". 用 was 或 were 填空。

1. It _____ cold on Monday.
2. I _____ at school on Friday.
3. What _____ the weather like on Wednesday?
4. John and Paul _____ very busy last week.
5. The woman _____ at the hairdresser's on Wednesday.
6. My dog _____ not well on Tuesday.
7. _____ you at home on Saturday?
8. Susan _____ in the country for the weekend.
9. I _____ at my teacher's with my friend on Thursday.
10. Where _____ you at about two thirty on Monday?

II. Give short answers to the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句简短回答下列问题。

1. a. Was it May 16th on Saturday?

Yes, it was.

b. Was it hot last week?

_____

c. Was your daughter ill on Monday?

_____

d. Were you in bed at eleven on Saturday?

_____

e. Was it a fine day on Sunday?

_____

f. Was he in class last week?

_____

g. Was she busy on Wednesday?

_____

h. Was John all right on Friday?

_____

2. a. Were you at the greengrocer's on Thursday?

No, I wasn't.

b. Were you at school on Friday?

_____

c. Was it cold at the weekend?

_____

d. Were you at home on June 30th?

_____

e. Was she at the dentist's on Thursday?

_____

f. Was Dave in the library on Wednesday?

_____

g. Was Jane tired on Monday?

_____

h. Was it July 25th on Tuesday?

_____

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Were you at school last week?

Yes, I was.

Was Mary at school last week, too? (at the office)

No, she wasn't. She was at the office.

b. Was Jack absent from school on Tuesday?

Was Jill absent from school on Tuesday, too? (at school)

c. Was it fine on Thursday?

Was it fine on Friday, too? (cloudy)

d. Were you at your mother's on Monday?

Was your sister at your mother's on Monday, too? (at the office)

e. Was Ann at the grocer's at five thirty on Saturday?

Was her husband at the grocer's at five thirty on Saturday, too? (at the hairdresser's)

2. a. Were you at the stationer's at twenty to ten?

No, I wasn't.

Was John there at that time?

No, he wasn't there, either.

b. Was Ann at school on Friday?

Was Lisa at school on that day?

c. Was it windy last week?

_____

Was it rainy last week?

_____

d. Were you at the doctor's at eight forty on Tuesday?

_____

Were you at the dentist's at that time on that day?

_____

e. Was John at home on Saturday?

_____

Was he at home on Sunday?

_____

Lesson 68 What's the time?

几点钟?

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Where were you at one o'clock on April 5th? (at school)
   I was at school.
2. Where was Emma at four o'clock on December 15th? (in her office)
   _____
3. Where were you at the weekend? (in the country)
   _____
4. Where was Sam on Monday? (in hospital)
   _____
5. Where was our teacher on Thursday? (in Beijing)
   _____
6. Where was Mary at noon on November 9th? (at the hairdresser's)
   _____
7. Where was the old woman on Sunday morning? (at church)
   _____
8. Where was our dog on Wednesday? (at home)
   _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. When were you at the dairy? (on Saturday)
   I was at the dairy on Saturday.
2. When was Tom at the baker's? (at about five)

   _____
3. When was my brother at the grocer's? (at about ten)

   _____
4. When were you at home? (on Tuesday)

   _____
5. When was Jane at the stationer's? (at about four)

   _____
6. When was she at the butcher's? (at eleven)

   _____
7. When was the policewoman at the office? (on Wednesday)

   _____
8. When were you at the greengrocer's? (at nine)

   _____

Lesson 69 The car race

汽车比赛

I. Fill in the blanks with "in", "on" or "at". 用 in, on 或 at 填空。

1. He must be _____ Japan _____ March 10th.
2. He was _____ church _____ Sunday.
3. She was here _____ August 9th.
4. We're going to spend our holidays _____ England.
5. I work _____ London, but live _____ the country.
6. Mary was _____ the hairdresser's _____ Tuesday.
7. They were _____ Canada _____ September.
8. Were you _____ church _____ Sunday?
9. My parents always go to bed late _____ night.
10. We were _____ home _____ Christmas Day.
11. What are you doing _____ the moment?
12. I was born _____ the 1st of September.
13. Was he _____ the meeting _____ Wednesday?
14. They are going to get married _____ May 1st.
15. There were fifteen cars _____ the race.

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. Were you and your friends in the country last weekend? (yes)

Yes, we were.

When were you there? (from ten in the morning to four in the afternoon)

We were there from ten in the morning to four in the afternoon.

2. Were Tom and Mary absent from school last Friday? (yes)

Yes, they were.

Where were they? (home)

They were at home.

3. Were you and your wife at the car race on May 16th? (no)

Where were you? (the park)

4. Were they at Jane's birthday party on Monday evening? (yes)

When were they there? (from eight thirty to nine thirty)

5. Were they in Greece in August 1999? (no)

Where were they? (Austria)

6. Were you in Turkey in 2000? (no)

Where were you? (Japan)

7. Were you at the baker's on Tuesday afternoon? (yes)

_____

When were you there? (about five)

_____

8. Were they at the office on Sunday morning? (no)

_____

Where were they? (church)

_____

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Were the boys out or at home last night? (out)

They were out.

2. Were Ann and Susan at home or at the game on Friday night? (at the game)

_____

3. Were the girls at the party or at the basketball game on April 1st? (at the party)

_____

4. Were the Sawyers at the car race or at the horse race on Saturday? (at the car race)

_____

5. Were you at school or in the office on Tuesday? (in the office)

_____

6. Were you in the city or in your country house for the weekend? (in our country house)

_____

7. Were you and your friends at your mother's or at your house on Wednesday? (at my mother's)

_____

8. Were they at the grocer's or at the butcher's on Thursday morning? (at the grocer's)

_____

Lesson 70 When were they there?

他们是什么时候在那里的？

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Were there any apples at the greengrocer's on Saturday? (yes)

Yes, there were. There were some apples there on Saturday.

b. Were there any oranges at the greengrocer's on Sunday? (no)

No, there weren't. There weren't any oranges there on Sunday.

c. Were there any people in the building on July 11th? (yes)

d. Were there any boys in the room on Wednesday? (no)

e. Were there any tins in the cupboard on Saturday? (no)

f. Were there any students at school on June 1st? (yes)

g. Were there any good cars in the race on June 30th? (yes)

2. a. Was there any sugar in the packet on Tuesday? (yes)

Yes, there was. There was some sugar in the packet on Tuesday.

b. Was there any mince at the butcher's on Friday? (no)

No, there wasn't. There wasn't any mince at the butcher's on Friday.

c. Was there any butter in the refrigerator last week? (yes)

_____

d. Was there any tea at the grocer's on Monday? (no)

_____

e. Was there any milk at the dairy on Thursday? (yes)

_____

f. Was there any soap in the bathroom on Sunday? (yes)

_____

g. Was there any writing paper and ink at the stationer's on Tuesday? (no)

_____

II. Add an appropriate preposition to each answer. 用适合的介词填空。

1. Where is Sally?

_____ the garden.

2. Where is my book?

_____ the desk.

3. When is he going to arrive home?

_____ six o'clock.

4. How do you go to work every day?

_____ bus.

5. Where is Tony sitting?
   _____ the left of Dave.
6. Where is Fred?
   _____ the park.
7. When do you usually go to bed?
   _____ midnight.
8. When are you going to fly to Australia?
   _____ May 6th.

Lesson 71 He's awful!

他讨厌透了！

I. Write the regular past tense form of the verbs. 写出下列动词的过去式。

1. work _____
2. wash _____
3. study _____
4. finish _____
5. arrive _____
6. play _____
7. empty _____
8. shave _____
9. rain _____
10. watch _____

II. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. Mary/walk/along the beach/along the bank of the river/yesterday

   Mary often walks along the beach, but she walked along the bank of the river yesterday.

2. the boys/play/in the playground/in the garden/yesterday afternoon

   _____

3. Bob/ study/in the classroom/in the library/yesterday morning

   _____

4. Mr. Zhang/stay/at home/at night/in the office/last night

   _____

5. she/watch television/in the evening/listen to the stereo/

yesterday evening

6. Peter/shave/in the morning/at noon/the day before yesterday

7. my husband/arrive home/at about five/at six/yesterday evening

8. you/want/oranges/bananas/yesterday

9. it/rain/in October/snow/yesterday

10. he/walk to work/at seven forty-five/at seven fifteen/yesterday morning

III. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Did he paint the chairs?

Yes, he did. He painted them.

Did he wash the dishes?

No, he didn't. He didn't wash them.

2. Did Marie wash the cups?

Did Peter wash the glasses?

3. Did he enjoy himself?

Did she enjoy herself?

4. Did Martin dry the spoons?

_____

Did Martin dry the forks?

_____

5. Did Jane clean the floor?

_____

Did Tom dust the shelves?

_____

6. Did he sharpen the knife?

_____

Did he empty the basket?

_____

7. Did your mother cook the meal?

_____

Did she bake any bread?

_____

8. Did you turn on the tap?

_____

Did you turn off the cooker?

_____

9. Did Mary telephone her boss?

_____

Did she telephone her sister?

_____

10. Did you open the door?

_____

Did you open the windows?

_____

Lesson 72 When did you . . . ?

你什么时候……？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. When did you air your room? (yesterday morning)
   I aired my room yesterday morning.
2. When did the doctor call? (the day before yesterday)
   _____
3. When did she arrive home? (at nine fifty last night)
   _____
4. When did you telephone him? (at three twenty-five yesterday afternoon)
   _____
5. When did they play in the garden? (yesterday afternoon)
   _____
6. When did he paint the floor? (the day before yesterday)
   _____
7. When did you enjoy yourselves? (the night before last)
   _____
8. When did she clean the kitchen? (the day before yesterday)
   _____

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. Jack/paint/chairs

Jack painted the chairs yesterday.

What else did he paint? (tables)

He painted the tables.

2. Mrs. Scott/clean/shelves

What else did she clean? (cooker)

3. I/dry/glasses

What else did you dry? (cups)

4. they/play/football

What else did they play? (basketball)

5. she/wash/her clothes

What else did she wash? (dishes)

6. Mr. Martin/paint/door

What else did he paint? (windows)

7. Marie/dust/dressing table

What else did she dust? (cupboard)

_____

8. we/clean/classroom

_____

What else did you clean? (blackboard)

_____

Lesson 73 The way to King Street

到国王街的走法

I. Write the past tense form of the irregular verbs. 写出下列不规则动词的过去式。

1. fly	_____	2. have	_____
3. go	_____	4. drink	_____
5. swim	_____	6. see	_____
7. find	_____	8. eat	_____
9. meet	_____	10. come	_____
11. do	_____	12. take	_____
13. say	_____	14. sit	_____
15. run	_____	16. make	_____
17. lose	_____	18. give	_____
19. speak	_____	20. catch	_____

II. Fill in the blanks with the past tense form of the verbs given. 用所给动词的过去式填空。

The weather _____ (be) nice last Sunday, and the Sawyers _____ (go) on a picnic. They _____ (be) very hungry and thirsty. They _____ (have) a big lunch. They _____ (eat) sandwiches and fruit. They _____ (drink) water or tea.

There _____ (be) some black ants on the ground. They _____ (be) hungry, too. Ken _____ (drop) a piece of bread. The ants _____ (eat) it. Then Kathy

_____ (drop) a piece of cake. The ants _____ (eat) that, too.

The Sawyers _____ (like) their lunch. They _____ (enjoy) themselves very much. And the ants _____ (enjoy) the Sawyers' lunch!

III. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Do you ever see Mrs. Mills? (yesterday)

Yes, I/we do. I/We saw her yesterday.

b. Does she ever type any letters? (the day before yesterday)

_____

c. Does he ever catch any fish? (yesterday afternoon)

_____

d. Does the cat ever climb a tree? (last Friday)

_____

e. Do you ever paint the house? (last year)

_____

f. Do you ever read a newspaper? (yesterday morning)

_____

g. Do they ever drink a glass of whisky? (yesterday evening)

_____

h. Do you ever see a Mercedes? (the day before yesterday)

_____

i. Does he ever eat steak? (last Friday evening)

_____

j. Do you ever meet your old boss? (in August 2001)

_____

2. a. When did the man finish his work? (last week)

He finished it last week.

b. When did she empty the basket? (yesterday evening)

_____

c. When did they buy the cheese at the dairy? (last Tuesday)

_____

d. When did you drink that bottle of wine? (last night)

_____

e. When did you meet Jane? (the day before yesterday)

_____

f. When did you see Helen? (in February)

_____

g. When did he close that window? (yesterday evening)

_____

h. When did she turn on the lights? (before dinner)

_____

IV. Finish the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列句子。

1. I didn't sit down ... (Jack)

I didn't sit down, but Jack sat down.

2. Tim didn't write a letter ... (John)

_____

3. Paul didn't go home early ... (David)

_____

4. I didn't swim in the sea ... (Marie)

_____

5. I didn't go to France . . . (Ann)

_____

6. The dog didn't take the meat . . . (the cat)

_____

7. You didn't read the magazine . . . (I)

_____

8. We didn't see his car . . . (they)

_____

9. Mark didn't lose his way . . . (Sam)

_____

10. Mary didn't drink her tea . . . (Ann)

_____

11. I didn't give him any money . . . (they)

_____

12. The girls didn't make a noise . . . (the boys)

_____

Lesson 74 What did they do?

他们干了什么？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. Did Jane drink coffee or tea last night? (tea)

   She drank tea. She didn't drink coffee.

2. Did you understand the man or the woman? (woman)

   _____

3. Did she wash the cups or the glasses yesterday? (glasses)

   _____

4. Did you eat beef or lamb the day before yesterday? (beef)

   _____

5. Did he give you a tie or a watch last Wednesday? (tie)

   _____

6. Did you meet an Italian tourist or a Spanish tourist last week? (Spanish)

   _____

7. Did they do their homework at school or at home yesterday? (at home)

   _____

8. Did he go to work by bus or by car yesterday morning? (by car)

   _____

II. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. Dave/study English/very hard/last night
   Dave studied English very hard last night.
2. the boys and girls/enjoy themselves/very much/last weekend
   _____
3. Mrs. Mills/wash dishes/carefully/yesterday evening
   _____
4. we/meet Mary/in the street/this morning/greet her warmly
   _____
5. Tim/run quickly/catch the school bus/yesterday morning
   _____
6. they/walk slowly/to the park/last Saturday evening
   _____
7. Jack's boss/speak to him angrily/last week
   _____
8. the students/work very well/last year
   _____

Lesson 75 Uncomfortable shoes

不舒适的鞋子

I. Write the past tense form of the verbs. 写出下列动词的过去式。

1. wear	_____	2. swim	_____
3. want	_____	4. have	_____
5. say	_____	6. greet	_____
7. cut	_____	8. buy	_____
9. teach	_____	10. stand	_____
11. get	_____	12. know	_____
13. take	_____	14. meet	_____
15. read	_____	16. understand	_____
17. drive	_____	18. answer	_____
19. tell	_____	20. lose	_____

II. Fill in the blanks with the past tense form of the verbs given. 用所给动词的过去式填空。

1. Mr. Grant _____ (ask) a question five minutes ago.
2. I _____ (look) for the book last week.
3. The teacher _____ (answer) some questions patiently yesterday.
4. The students _____ (study) very hard last year.
5. It _____ (rain) heavily last night.
6. She _____ (come) to the meeting late yesterday afternoon.

7. The meeting _____ (start) at three o'clock yesterday afternoon.
8. He _____ (want) an ice cream a minute ago.
9. We _____ (meet) them this morning.
10. He _____ (buy) a nice car two years ago.
11. The dog _____ (run) very fast after a cat.
12. The policeman _____ (go) into the building.

III. Rewrite some sentences in the dialogue according to the examples. 仿照例句改写下列对话中的部分句子。

What was the living room like?

It looked large and comfortable.

Were there any doors?

Did it have any doors?

Yes. There was one door.

Yes. It had one door.

Were there any windows?

_____

Yes. There were two windows.

_____

What else were there in the living room?

_____

Were there any bookshelves?

_____

Yes. There was one bookshelf.

_____

What about the furniture?

Were there any lamps?

_____

Yes. There were two lamps.

_____

Were there any chairs in the room?

_____

Yes. There were four chairs.

_____

What else were there in the room?

_____

Were there any tables?

_____

Yes. There was one table.

_____

IV. Finish the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列句子。

1. Mark went home . . . (Jack)
   Mark went home and Jack went home, too.
2. John saw a dog . . . (Pat)
   _____
3. Sam found his book . . . (Jane)
   _____
4. Dave cut his finger . . . (William)
   _____
5. Miss Li read the book . . . (Miss Chen)
   _____
6. Tim ate three oranges . . . (Tony)
   _____
7. Doris lost her bag . . . (Peter)
   _____

8. Mary drove quickly . . . (Mary's husband)

_____

9. Paul drank some tea . . . (Kathy)

_____

10. Mike taught English yesterday . . . (Carol)

_____

Lesson 76 When did you . . . ?

你什么时候……？

I. Fill in the blanks with the past tense form of the verbs given.
用所给动词的过去式填空。

The children _____ (leave) home last Saturday morning at nine o'clock. The bus _____ (go) very slowly, so they _____ (arrive) at the beach at about nine thirty. Some of them _____ (jump) into the sea and _____ (swim) happily. Some _____ (make) a fire and some _____ (bring) some wood. They _____ (cook) some food and _____ (eat) it quickly. They also _____ (drink) cold drinks. Then some of them _____ (play) on the sand, and others _____ (sleep). At four o'clock they _____ (catch) a bus home.

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. Did you buy a bike?
   Yes, I did.
   When did you buy it? (last week)
   I bought it last week.
   Did you buy a handbag, too?
   No, I didn't.
2. Did you play football?
   _____

When did you play? (yesterday afternoon)

_____

Did you play hockey, too?

_____

3. Did she go shopping?

_____

When did she go shopping? (three days ago)

_____

Did her husband go shopping with her?

_____

4. Did he talk to the shop assistant?

_____

When did he talk to the shop assistant? (the day before yesterday)

_____

Did he talk to the manager, too?

_____

5. Did they go to see a doctor?

_____

When did they go to see a doctor? (a week ago)

_____

Did they see a nurse, too?

_____

6. Did the postman come?

_____

When did he come? (at seven this morning)

_____

Did the milkman come, too?

_____

Lesson 77 Terrible toothache

要命的牙痛

I. Fill in the blanks with the past tense form of the verbs given. 用所给动词的过去式填空。

1. She _____ (write) a letter home last week.
2. He _____ (go) to school by bike yesterday.
3. They _____ (eat) a big meal last night.
4. My sister _____ (feel) sick the night before last.
5. I _____ (wash) my hands a minute ago.
6. You _____ (sleep) late this morning.
7. We _____ (meet) our teacher at the supermarket last Sunday.
8. She _____ (come) back to China in the summer of 2001.
9. I _____ (buy) this dress two years ago.
10. He _____ (get) back home at a quarter to seven yesterday.

II. According to the example, ask three questions about each sentence given, then answer the questions. 仿照例句就每个句子提出三个问题，然后逐一回答。

1. Peter bought a watch at Mr. Lee's last month.

What did Peter do? *He bought a watch.*

Where did he buy it? *He bought it at Mr. Lee's.*

When did he buy it? *He bought it last month.*

2. Jack saw some nice cars at the car race four days ago.

3. Marie ate two bars of chocolate at home yesterday.

4. She typed some letters in her office yesterday morning.

5. My father painted the bookcase in the garage a week ago.

6. We met our dentist at the bus stop last Tuesday.

7. They sold their house in London in 1998.

8. He telephoned his brother in Beijing last month.

III. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. finish my homework/watch television

   I must finish my homework. I want to watch television.

2. buy some writing paper and an envelope/write a letter

   _____

3. wash my hands/eat my lunch

   _____

4. sit down/have a good rest

   _____

5. boil some water/have a cup of tea

   _____

6. go to the greengrocer's/cook a meal

   _____

7. get up early/catch the first bus

   _____

8. talk to the salesman/buy a refrigerator

   _____

Lesson 78 When did you . . . ?

你什么时候……？

I. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. swim in the river/in the sea/yesterday evening

Did you swim in the river yesterday evening?

No, I didn't. I swam in the sea.

2. lose your way in the city/in the country/a year ago

3. sit at the front of the class/at the back/last month

4. buy a car/a bike/the day before yesterday

5. travel to France/in May/in June/2000

6. arrive here/on August 2nd/August 3rd/last year

II. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given. 用所给动词的正确形式填空。

Mr. and Mrs. Scott _____ (have) two children, a

son and a daughter. Their son's name _____ (be) Sam. Their daughter's name _____ (be) Ann. Sam and Ann _____ (go) to the same school, but they _____ (be) not in the same grade. They _____ (go) to school by bus.

But Sam Scott _____ (walk) to school yesterday morning. He _____ (go) to his first class at eight o'clock. He _____ (open) the door and _____ (walk) in. The teacher _____ (be) not there, but his classmates _____ (be).

The windows _____ (be) closed. Sam _____ (open) one. He _____ (look) at his homework. He _____ (talk) to his friend. They _____ (talk) and _____ (wait) for their teacher.

Finally the teacher _____ (arrive). He _____ (be) half an hour late, but he _____ (not say) why. He _____ (say), "_____ (sit) down and _____ (start) work." He _____ (give) them a new lesson.

Lesson 79 Carol's shopping list

卡罗尔的购物单

I. Fill in the blanks with "much", "many", "some", "any" or "a lot of". 用 much, many, some, any 或 a lot of 填空。

1. John drinks _____ coffee every day.
2. I haven't got _____ time for study.
3. I have _____ black ink, but I don't have _____ blue ink at all.
4. We need _____ groceries this week.
5. Are there _____ flowers in your garden in autumn?
6. There is not _____ chalk in the box on the teacher's desk. We need some.
7. I bought _____ clothes in Beijing last year.
8. Jane doesn't know _____ people in London and she hasn't got _____ friends there.
9. He borrowed _____ books from the library yesterday for the long holiday.
10. The old woman was poor. She did not have _____ money and often did not have _____ food to eat, but she was happy. "I have _____ friends," she said, "and I don't have _____ enemies. That is the secret of happiness. People who have _____ money often have _____ enemies, too!"

II. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Have you got a pencil and a ruler?

I've got a pencil, but I haven't got a ruler.

b. Has he got a shirt and a tie?

c. Have they got a book and a map?

d. Has she got a cup and a glass?

e. Has Jane got a spoon and a fork?

f. Have you got a desk and a chair?

2. a. Have you got any boxes and baskets?

I've got some boxes, but I haven't got any baskets.

b. Have they got any apples and bananas?

c. Has he got any stamps and envelopes?

d. Have we got any peas and beans?

e. Has she got any cakes and biscuits?

f. Has Sam got any books and magazines?

3. a. Have you got any milk and water?

I've got some milk, but I haven't got any water.

b. Has he got any lamb and mince?

c. Has she got any honey and sugar?

d. Have we got any cheese and jam?

e. Have they got any paper and glue?

f. Has Ann got any tea and juice?

4. a. Have you got many eggs and chickens?

I've got a lot of eggs, but I haven't got many chickens.

b. Has he got many bottles of beer and bottles of wine?

c. Have they got many newspapers and magazines?

d. Has she got many pears and peaches?

e. Has he got many pens and watches?

f. Have you got many cabbages and lettuces?

5. a. Have you got much paper and money?

I've got a lot of paper, but I haven't got much money.

b. Have you got much medicine and water?

c. Has she got much butter and sugar?

_____

d. Have they got much lamb and beef?

_____

e. Has he got much tobacco and whisky?

_____

f. Has he got much beer and tea?

_____

Lesson 80 I must go to the . . .

我必须去……

I. Give correct replies, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词写出下列各句的对应句。

1. You look tired. (a rest)
   You need a rest .
2. I'm very thirsty. (some water)
3. He wants to buy a television. (five thousand *yuan*)
4. You look sleepy. (some sleep)
5. She is ill. (some medicine)
6. We feel hungry. (some food)
7. I want to cook dinner. (some meat and vegetables)
8. I'm going to write a letter. (some paper and ink)
9. She has a bad headache. (two aspirins)
10. We're having a party. (some beer and wine)

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do we have any honey? (grocer's/get)
   No, we don't. We must go to the grocer's to get some.
2. Does she have any envelopes? (newsagent's/buy)
   _____
3. Do you have any steak? (butcher's/buy)
   _____
4. Do you have any bread? (baker's/get)
   _____
5. Do you have any beans? (greengrocer's/buy)
   _____
6. Do we have any aspirins? (chemist's/get)
   _____
7. Do you have any jam? (grocer's/buy)
   _____
8. Does he have any writing paper? (newsagent's/get)
   _____
9. Do we have any eggs? (grocer's/buy)
   _____
10. Do we have any medicine for a bad cold? (chemist's/get)
    _____

Lesson 81 Roast beef and potatoes

烤牛肉和土豆

I. Combine each pair of sentences according to the example. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. Mr. Scott usually drinks coffee for breakfast.
   Mr. Scott usually eats bread for breakfast.
   Mr. Scott usually has coffee and bread for breakfast.

2. Jane usually eats eggs for breakfast.
   Jane usually drinks milk for breakfast.
   _____

3. Sam ate two sandwiches and an apple for lunch yesterday.
   Sam drank a glass of beer for lunch yesterday.
   _____

4. Ann is eating an apple for lunch.
   Ann is eating salad for lunch.
   _____

5. My friends and I ate roast beef and potatoes for dinner.
   My friends and I drank six glasses of beer for dinner.
   _____

6. I sometimes eat cheese after a meal.
   I sometimes eat biscuits after a meal.
   _____

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答问题。

1. When do you usually have a bath? (at six thirty in the morning)

   I usually have a bath at six thirty in the morning.

2. When did Susan and Jack have a meal in the restaurant? (at six yesterday evening)

   _____

3. Where did you and your friends have a party two weeks ago? (in my house)

   _____

4. Who had a good time in the park last weekend? (all the boys and girls)

   _____

5. When do teachers and students have their summer holiday? (in July and August)

   _____

6. When did Tony have a swim in the sea? (last Sunday evening)

   _____

7. Where are the students having their English lesson? (in their classroom)

   _____

8. What does your child usually have for breakfast? (two slices of bread with cheese, an egg and milk)

   _____

III. Match the questions in Column A with the answers in Column B. 将 A 栏中的问题和 B 栏中的答案连起来。

A	B
1. What are you doing now?	a. No, they aren't. They are having a swim in the sea.
2. Did you have a good time?	b. Yes, we can.
3. What are you going to do?	c. He's having a bath.
4. What do you usually have for lunch?	d. He's going to have a rest.
5. Who had a party the night before last?	e. They're going to have a holiday in the country.
6. When do you usually have tea?	f. I must have a drink.
7. What's Steven doing now?	g. Yes, we did.
8. Are they having a swim in the river?	h. Those tourists from Korea did.
9. What's Tom going to do?	i. I'm having a French lesson.
10. Where are they going to have a holiday?	j. I'm going to have a haircut.
11. What must you do now?	k. I usually have vegetables and fruit.
12. Can we have a talk this afternoon?	l. We usually have tea at four in the afternoon.

Lesson 82 I had . . .

我吃(喝、从事)了……

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Did you have breakfast and lunch at the hotel?
   We had breakfast , but we didn't have lunch .
2. Did they have wine and beer at the party?
3. Did he have tea and dinner yesterday?
4. Did you have a party and a holiday last month?
5. Did she have a lesson and a meeting yesterday afternoon?
6. Did you have a haircut and some new shoes last week?
7. Did they have an English lesson and a German lesson on Monday?
8. Did you have some biscuits and a glass of milk?

II. Make sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句造句。

1. Sam and Ann/roast beef/for dinner/yesterday

Sam had roast beef for dinner yesterday, and Ann did, too.

2. I/usually/milk/in the morning/he/not

   I usually have milk in the morning, but he doesn't.

3. you and I/a swim/in the sea/the day before yesterday

4. they/a holiday/now/we/not

5. Sam/can/a glass of beer/his son/not

6. she and you/must/a lesson/now

7. Mr. Scott/a bad day/yesterday/Mrs. Scott/not

8. you and we/a good time/at the party/last night

9. my friend and I/a walk/along the beach/every evening

10. Jill/usually/lunch/at home/Jim/not

Lesson 83 Going on holiday

度假

I. Make up dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句编写对话。

1. you/have a haircut/last Thursday

When are you going to have a haircut?

I have already had a haircut.

When did you have a haircut?

I had a haircut last Thursday.

2. he/have a swim/two days ago

3. you/have a holiday in the country/last month

4. she/have an English lesson/this morning

5. they/have a meal in the restaurant/last week

6. you/have lunch/at twelve o'clock

7. he/have a drink/half an hour ago

8. they/have a party/on July 15th

9. she/have a bath/at seven this morning

10. you/have dinner/an hour ago

II. Give correct explanations for the requests according to the examples. 仿照例句正确解释下列句子。

1. a. I want to have a holiday.

   I haven't had a holiday.

   b. They want to have a party.

   c. He wants to have a swim in the sea.

   d. I want to have an orange.

   e. He wants to have a haircut.

   f. She wants to have a meal in the restaurant.

   g. I want to have a talk with you.

   h. She wants to have a glass of milk.

2. a. I want to have some wine.

   I haven't had any wine.

   b. She wants to have some cheese.

   c. We want to have some lamb.

   d. He wants to have some fruit.

   e. They want to have some whisky.

f. He wants to have some beer.

_____

g. I want to have some butter.

_____

h. They want to have some meat.

_____

Lesson 84 Have you had . . . ?

你已经……了吗?

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Have you had much beer?

   Yes, I have. I have just had a lot of beer.

   b. Has she had many vegetables?

   _____

   c. Have they had many bananas?

   _____

   d. Has he had many cakes?

   _____

   e. Has she had much milk?

   _____

   f. Have you had much coffee?

   _____

   g. Have they had much fruit?

   _____

   h. Has he had much medicine?

   _____

2. a. Have you had much coffee?

   No, we haven't. We haven't had any coffee at all.

   b. Have they had many cakes?

   _____

c. Has he had much wine?

_____

d. Has she had much milk?

_____

e. Have you had much steak?

_____

f. Have they had much beef?

_____

g. Has he had many aspirins?

_____

h. Have you had much water?

_____

II. Give correct replies to the sentences given according to the example. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. Let's have dinner now.

   But I've already had dinner.

2. Let's have some fruit now.

   _____

3. Let's have some tea now.

   _____

4. Let's have some apples now.

   _____

5. Let's have lunch now.

   _____

6. Let's have a cup of coffee now.

   _____

7. Let's have some roast beef now.

   _____

8. Let's have a drink now.

_____

9. Let's have a swim now.

_____

10. Let's have some whisky now.

_____

Lesson 85 Paris in the spring

巴黎之春

I. Complete the sentences, using "do", "did" or "done". 用 do, did 或 done 完成下列各句。

1. What are you going to _____ with that piece of cloth?
2. What are you going to _____ in the holidays?
3. What did you _____ yesterday?
4. What have you _____ with the vase?
5. They _____ a lot of work yesterday.
6. You have _____ your homework, and I have _____ my homework, too.
7. _____ you have a good time at the party last week?
8. _____ you watch television every night?
   Yes, I _____.
9. Have you _____ yesterday's homework?
   Yes, I _____ it last night.

II. Give correct replies to the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. May I speak to Mr. Smith? (the newsagent's)
   Yes, of course. He's been to the newsagent's, but he's here now.
2. May I speak to Mr. Blake? (a meeting)
   _____

3. May I speak to Miss Wang? (the restaurant)

_____

4. May I speak to Jane? (school)

_____

5. May I speak to Bob? (the hospital)

_____

6. May I speak to Ann? (the shops)

_____

7. May I speak to Dave? (the library)

_____

8. May I speak to Mr. Scott? (the dentist's)

_____

III. Write the correct questions or answers to complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句根据上下文提问或回答。

1. a. you/the United States

Have you ever been to the United States?

Yes, I have.

When did you go there?

I went there two years ago.

b. she/Greece

_____

Yes, she has.

_____

She went there in 1998.

c. they/Norway

_____

Yes, they have.

They went there in September 1999.

d. he/Thailand

Yes, he has.

He went there six months ago.

e. you/Japan

Yes, we have.

We went there last month.

f. you/the Great Wall

Yes, I have.

I went there last summer.

2. a. Have you ever been to the Summer Palace?

No, I have never been there.

b. Have you ever been to Poland?

c. Has he ever been to Turkey?

d. Have they ever been to Austria?

e. Has she ever been to New York?

f. Has he ever been to Germany?

Lesson 86 What have you done?

你已经做了什么?

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Have you washed your hands and face?
   I've already washed my hands, but I haven't washed my face.
2. Has he done his homework and the housework?
   _____
3. Have they painted the doors and windows?
   _____
4. Has she typed the letter and posted it?
   _____
5. Have you dusted the table and chairs?
   _____
6. Has she telephoned Jane and Jack?
   _____
7. Have you been to London and Paris?
   _____
8. Have you aired the room and cleaned the floor?
   _____

II. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. The windows are closed. (I)
   Yes, I've just closed them.

2. The door is open. (Tom)

_____

3. The table is clean. (Mum)

_____

4. The stereo is on. (Mary)

_____

5. The dishes are dry. (Emma)

_____

6. The lights are off. (Dad)

_____

7. The magazines are on the shelf. (I)

_____

8. The shirts and trousers are wet. (Jane)

_____

9. The basket is empty. (Sam)

_____

10. The cups and glasses are in the cupboard. (I)

_____

Lesson 87 A car crash

车祸

I. Write the past tense and the past participle of the verbs. 写出下列动词的过去式和过去分词。

1. wash _____ _____
2. see _____ _____
3. greet _____ _____
4. buy _____ _____
5. eat _____ _____
6. sweep _____ _____
7. do _____ _____
8. meet _____ _____
9. finish _____ _____
10. make _____ _____

II. Ask and answer questions according to the example. 仿照例句提问并回答。

1. You started to do your homework an hour ago.

   Have you done it yet?

   No, I haven't. I'm still doing it.

2. He started to make a bookcase yesterday.

3. You started to wash the dishes five minutes ago.

4. He started to paint the chairs two days ago.

5. They started to have dinner at six o'clock.

6. You started to repair the table twenty minutes ago.

7. She started to cook the meal at five o'clock.

8. You started to repair my bike two hours ago.

9. Tim started to eat the steak some minutes ago.

10. She started to clean her shoes ten minutes ago.

11. They started to look at the pictures after lunch.

12. He started to read the newspaper an hour ago.

III. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Have John and Mary stopped working?
   John has already stopped, but Mary is still working.
2. Have the boys and the girls stopped playing?
   _____
3. Have Ann and Peter stopped reading?
   _____
4. Have the men and the women stopped talking?
   _____
5. Have Jane and Jill stopped listening to the stereo?
   _____
6. Have Helen and Dave stopped running?
   _____

IV. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. your friend/buy a watch/last week
   Has your friend bought a watch?
   Yes, he has.
   When did he buy it?
   He bought it last week.
2. you/see the cat/a minute ago
   _____
   Yes, I have.
   When did you see it?
   _____
3. they/eat the chicken/yesterday evening
   _____

Yes, they have.

When did they eat it?

_____

4. she/do the housework/at about four o'clock

_____

Yes, she has.

When did she do it?

_____

5. he/have a cigarette/two minutes ago

_____

Yes, he has.

When did he have one?

_____

6. they/find their books/half an hour ago

_____

Yes, they have.

When did they find them?

_____

7. they/have a party/last Friday evening

_____

Yes, they have.

When did they have one?

_____

8. she/go to the baker's/at nine this morning

_____

Yes, she has.

When did she go there?

_____

9. you/meet your new neighbours/yesterday morning

_____

Yes, I have.

When did you meet them?

_____

10. Sophie/drive a Toyota/a year ago

_____

Yes, she has.

When did she drive one?

_____

Lesson 88 Have you ... yet?

你已经……了吗？

I. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. Close the window, please.
   Yes, of course. Now I've closed it.
2. Open the door, please.
   _____
3. Sweep the floor, please.
   _____
4. Clean the blackboard, please.
   _____
5. Dust the dressing table, please.
   _____
6. Sharpen the pencils, please.
   _____
7. Wash the dishes, please.
   _____
8. Make the tea, please.
   _____
9. Type the letter for me, please.
   _____
10. Give the books to Ann, please.
    _____

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Have you met Ann and Jane yet?
   I've met Ann, but I haven't met Jane yet.
2. Have you had beef and potatoes yet?
   _____
3. Has she bought envelopes and stamps yet?
   _____
4. Has he found the keys and the money yet?
   _____
5. Have they sold their house and car yet?
   _____
6. Has the cat had its fish and milk yet?
   _____
7. Have you had the medicine for your cold and headache yet?
   _____
8. Has he put on his suit and tie yet?
   _____
9. Have they turned off the television and the stereo yet?
   _____
10. Has she typed a letter to her parents and one to her teacher yet?
    _____

Lesson 89 For sale

待售

I. Write the past tense and the past participle of the verbs. 写出下列动词的过去式和过去分词。

1. come _____ _____
2. put _____ _____
3. give _____ _____
4. shut _____ _____
5. speak _____ _____
6. go _____ _____
7. swim _____ _____
8. take _____ _____
9. read _____ _____
10. write _____ _____

II. Fill in the blanks with "for" or "since". 用 **for** 或 **since** 填空。

1. I have been here _____ two weeks.
2. He has worked in that factory _____ last month.
3. They have lived in that house _____ a month.
4. The woman has lived in Guangzhou _____ January.
5. We have taught in this school _____ three years.
6. He has been an engineer _____ 1996.
7. She has had a bad cold _____ a week.
8. He has stayed at home _____ two years.

9. I have had this car _____ five years.

10. She has worked in this city _____ last year.

III. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. a. He went into the cinema an hour ago.

He has been in the cinema for an hour.

b. They walked into the building ten minutes ago.

_____

c. My sister flew to Paris two years ago.

_____

d. Those women went into the shop four hours ago.

_____

e. The boys went to the beach six hours ago.

_____

f. He went to Korea three months ago.

_____

g. I came to England a week ago.

_____

h. She went into the library two hours ago.

_____

i. He went into the teacher's office half an hour ago.

_____

j. She went to see the doctor thirty minutes ago.

_____

2. a. He went into the cinema at four o'clock.

He has been in the cinema since four o'clock.

b. They walked into the building at five o'clock.

_____

c. My sister flew to Paris in 2000.

_____

d. Those women went into the shop at ten o'clock.

_____

e. The boys went to the beach early this morning.

_____

f. He went to Korea in April.

_____

g. I came to England last week.

_____

h. She went into the library at three o'clock.

_____

i. He went into the teacher's office at two o'clock.

_____

j. She went to see the doctor at eight thirty this morning.

_____

Lesson 90 Have you ... yet?

你已经……了吗？

I. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb given. 用所给动词的正确形式填空。

1. _____ you _____ (read) this magazine yet?
   Yes, I _____ (read) it half an hour ago.
2. John _____ (just take) some medicine, so he feels better now.
3. I _____ (read) a very good book now, but I _____ (not finish) it yet.
4. It _____ (rain) last week from Monday to Saturday, but the weather is lovely now.
5. Our teacher _____ (travel) to many places in England. She _____ (live) there in 1995.
6. I _____ (meet) Mrs. Smith a week ago, but I _____ (not meet) Mr. Smith yet.
7. I'm sorry, you can't see the boss. He _____ (leave) the office an hour ago.
8. You _____ (be) in Japan last month. What _____ you _____ (buy) there?
9. I'm hungry. I _____ (have) breakfast four hours ago and I _____ (not have) a meal since then.
10. How long _____ you _____ (work) in this office, Miss James?
    I _____ (work) here for thirty years!

II. Correct the mistakes in the sentences and rewrite them. 改错并重写下列句子。

1. I have lived in Greece for 1976.

_____

2. Have you had good weather last weekend?

_____

3. He has taken his medicine an hour ago.

_____

4. I've seen Sam and Tim yesterday.

_____

5. I'm already waiting for half an hour.

_____

6. We have this house since 1998.

_____

7. Who has given you that lovely hat?

_____

8. That's a nice picture. Have you painted it yourself?

_____

9. We're having our new car for four days.

_____

10. I've fallen down a minute ago.

_____

Lesson 91 Poor Ian!

可怜的伊恩！

I. Replace "am/is/are going to" with "shall/will". 用 shall/will 替换 am/is/are going to。

1. The bus is going to take you to your school.

_____

2. He's going to do his homework tomorrow.

_____

3. We're going to have a meeting next Wednesday.

_____

4. It's going to rain today.

_____

5. We're going to have another English lesson tomorrow afternoon.

_____

6. Susan is going to move into her new house the day after tomorrow.

_____

7. They're going to enjoy themselves on their holiday next month.

_____

8. You're going to meet them tomorrow evening.

_____

9. I'm going to go back home next weekend.

_____

10. We're going to have a big party tomorrow night.

_____

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. I/break my pencil/I/give you another one

   What's the matter?

   I've broken my pencil.

   It doesn't matter. *I'll give you another one.*

2. I/lose my umbrella/I/buy you a new one

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

3. they/lose their way/the policeman/help them

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

4. I/have a bad stomachache for two days/we/take you to the doctor's

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

5. she/not get up yet/she/get up soon

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

6. my son/lose his book/I/buy him a new one

   What's the matter?

   _____

It doesn't matter. _____

7. we/not finish our homework yet/you/do it tomorrow

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

8. she/lose her pen/I/lend her a pencil

   What's the matter?

   _____

   It doesn't matter. _____

Lesson 92 When will . . . ?

什么时候要……？

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Are you going to finish work early tomorrow?
   Yes, I'll finish work early tomorrow.
2. Are they going to have a party on Saturday night?
   _____
3. Is he going to go to Shanghai on business next week?
   _____
4. Are you going to paint your table and chairs soon?
   _____
5. Is he going to have a haircut at the weekend?
   _____
6. Is she going to have a holiday next year?
   _____
7. Are they going to visit us soon?
   _____
8. Are you going to telephone her on Sunday?
   _____
9. Is it going to snow next month?
   _____
10. Are they going to move to a new house in July?
    _____

II. Give short answers to the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句简短回答下列问题。

1. a. Will he paint our room next Tuesday?
   Yes, he will.
   b. Will you have a haircut tomorrow afternoon?
   _____
   c. Will they meet in Beijing next month?
   _____
   d. Will he leave home for Japan next year?
   _____
   e. Will you drive to the seaside after dinner tomorrow evening?
   _____
   f. Will she pack her bags the day after tomorrow?
   _____
   g. Will they arrive at two o'clock tomorrow afternoon?
   _____
   h. Will you repair my car tomorrow morning?
   _____

2. a. Will you finish the job tomorrow?
   No, we won't.
   b. Will they be on holiday next month?
   _____
   c. Will you miss Ian?
   _____
   d. Will he have a shave tomorrow morning?
   _____
   e. Will she telephone you tomorrow morning?
   _____

f. Will they make an appointment tomorrow?

_____

g. Will it snow tomorrow?

_____

h. Will it rain at the weekend?

_____

Lesson 93 Our new neighbour

我们的新邻居

I. Ask and answer questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词提问并回答。

1. you/have a haircut/next week/last week

   Will you have a haircut next week?

   No, I won't. I had a haircut last week.

2. she/clean the kitchen/tomorrow morning/yesterday morning

3. they/go to London/next month/last month

4. he/visit Seoul/next May/last May

5. you/play football/tomorrow afternoon/yesterday afternoon

6. your son/go to England/next year/last year

7. they/fly to Rome/the month after next/the month before last

_____

_____

8. she/stay in Berlin/next October/last October

_____

_____

9. he/work/in Sydney/next year/last year

_____

_____

10. you/see the film/tomorrow/yesterday

_____

_____

II. Complete the dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词完成下列对话。

1. When will you go to Moscow? (next Friday)

I shall go to Moscow next Friday.

Who will go with you? (my boss)

My boss will go with me.

2. When will she leave Madrid? (next month)

_____

Who will go with her? (her husband)

_____

3. When will you go to the butcher's? (tomorrow morning)

_____

Who will go with you? (my friend)

_____

4. When will they travel to New York? (next week)

_____

Who will go with them? (I)

_____

5. When will you clean your room? (tomorrow)

_____

Who will help you? (my sister)

_____

6. When will he pack his bags? (the day after tomorrow)

_____

Who will do it with him? (his wife)

_____

7. When shall we go to the beach? (tomorrow evening)

_____

Who will go with us? (our children)

_____

8. When will she visit her sick uncle? (next Monday)

_____

Who will go with her? (her brother)

_____

9. When will he repair the car? (tomorrow afternoon)

_____

Who will help him? (his assistant)

_____

10. When will you fly to Tokyo? (the day after tomorrow)

_____

Who will go with you? (my friend Nigel)

_____

Lesson 94 When did you/will you go to . . . ?

你过去/将在什么时候去……?

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What will you do tomorrow? (wash my clothes)

   I shall wash my clothes.

2. What will your daughter do the day after tomorrow? (have a holiday)

3. What will your friends do next week? (fly to Beijing)

4. What will Jane do next month? (move into a new flat)

5. What shall we do next year? (travel to Stockholm)

6. What will you do this evening? (watch television)

7. What will John and Helen do tomorrow evening? (go for a walk in the park)

8. What will the students do next weekend? (have a party)

9. What will you do tomorrow evening? (stay at home and have a rest)

_____

10. What will Ann do at eight o'clock tomorrow morning? (have a lesson)

_____

II. Change the statements into questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列肯定句改为疑问句。

1. You will come and see me next Tuesday.
   Will you come and see me next Tuesday?
2. You will buy me some envelopes tomorrow.

   _____
3. I shall meet you next Thursday.

   _____
4. They will go there next week. .

   _____
5. We shall have a party the day after tomorrow.

   _____
6. We shall go for a walk tomorrow morning.

   _____
7. I shall speak to him about it tomorrow.

   _____
8. He will invite her to dinner tonight.

   _____
9. She will buy a new radio next month.

   _____
10. They will go to Berlin again next year.

    _____

11. We shall climb up the hill tomorrow evening.

_____

12. The children will play in the park next Sunday.

_____

13. I shall buy some beef at the butcher's tomorrow.

_____

14. You will talk to them tomorrow morning.

_____

Lesson 95 Tickets, please.

请把车票拿出来。

I. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. I feel tired. (you/sit down)
   You'd better sit down.
2. He's thirsty. (he/have a cup of tea)
   _____
3. It's hot in this room. (we/open the windows)
   _____
4. I've got a cold. (you/drink more water)
   _____
5. She's tired. (she/have a rest)
   _____
6. Your coat is dirty. (you/take off)
   _____
7. Our boss is ill. (we/go and see him tomorrow)
   _____
8. He has got a headache. (he/take an aspirin)
   _____
9. They feel cold. (they/put on more clothes)
   _____
10. There is not much milk in the refrigerator. (we/buy some)
    _____

11. It's raining outside. (we/stay at home tonight)

_____

II. Practise "must" by writing sentences according to the example, using the cues given. 仿照例句用 must 造句。

1. He's had a bad stomachache. (go and see a doctor)
   He must go and see a doctor.
2. I'm very hungry. (have a meal)

   _____
3. He's sleeping now. (you/keep quiet)

   _____
4. There isn't any sugar in the jar. (I/buy some)

   _____
5. They have got measles. (we/call the doctor)

   _____
6. It's very cold outside. (you/stay at home)

   _____
7. Your hair is very long. (have a haircut)

   _____
8. Our room is very dirty. (clean it)

   _____
9. Susan has a temperature. (stay in bed)

   _____
10. Turn off the television. (do your homework)

    _____
11. He's already studied for two hours. (have a rest)

    _____

III. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. There are a lot of books in our new library.

There are plenty of books in our new library.

2. They've got a lot of money.

_____

3. There are usually a lot of people in the park at weekends.

_____

4. We can't leave now. We still have a lot of work to do.

_____

5. You must drink a lot of water.

_____

6. She must read a lot of books to pass the exam next year.

_____

7. We still have a lot of time.

_____

8. A lot of Korean tourists will come here next month.

_____

9. We still have a lot of milk in the refrigerator.

_____

10. John has got a lot of ties.

_____

Lesson 96 What's the exact time?

确切的时间是几点?

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What did you do two minutes ago? (meet Jane)

   I met Jane two minutes ago.

   What will you do in two minutes' time? (meet Jack)

   I shall meet Jack in two minutes' time.

2. What did you do an hour ago? (sweep the floor)

   What will you do in an hour's time? (cook dinner for my family)

3. What did she do two hours ago? (give a lesson)

   What will she do in two hours' time? (go home)

4. What did they do two weeks ago? (read some interesting books)

   What will they do in two weeks' time? (have a party)

5. What did he do a month ago? (fly to New York on business)

What will he do in a month's time? (go to London for a meeting)

_____

6. What did they do six months ago? (sell their old car)

_____

What will they do in six months' time? (buy a new car)

_____

7. What did he do fifteen minutes ago? (drive to work)

_____

What will he do in fifteen minutes' time? (type a letter)

_____

8. What did you do three months ago? (speak to my boss about my job)

_____

What will you do in three months' time? (look for a new job)

_____

II. Answer the questions, using the times given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的时间回答下列问题。

1. What's the exact time? (5:02)

It's two minutes past five.

When will the train leave? (5:20)

The train will leave in eighteen minutes' time.

2. What's the exact time? (7:58)

_____

When will he start work? (8:00)

_____

3. What's the exact time? (9:45)

_____

When will we finish our lesson? (9:50)

_____

4. What's the exact time? (11:30)

_____

When will you have lunch? (12:00)

_____

5. What's the exact time? (2:03)

_____

When will the bus be here? (2:10)

_____

6. What's the exact time? (4:20)

_____

When will the plane take off? (4:55)

_____

7. What's the exact time? (8:22)

_____

When will the meeting start? (8:30)

_____

8. What's the exact time? (6:56)

_____

When will the News begin on CCTV? (7:00)

_____

Lesson 97 A small blue case

一只蓝色的小箱子

I. Write the sentences, using "mine", "yours", "his", "hers", "ours" or "theirs" according to the example. 仿照例句用 mine, yours, his, hers, ours 或 theirs 改写下列句子。

1. Whose book is this?
   It's my book.
   It's mine.

2. Whose shoes are these?
   They're their shoes.
   _____

3. Whose pencil is this?
   It's his pencil.
   _____

4. Whose dog is this?
   It's her dog.
   _____

5. Whose keys are these?
   They're their keys.
   _____

6. Whose school is this?
   It's our school.
   _____

7. Whose magazines are these?
   They're your magazines.
   _____

8. Whose chairs are these?
   They're their chairs.
   _____

9. Whose tea is this?
   It's my tea.
   _____

10. Whose umbrella is this?
    It's his umbrella.
    _____

11. Whose car is this?
    It's our car.
    _____

12. Whose tickets are these?
    They're your tickets.
    _____

II. Fill in the blanks with possessive adjectives or possessive pronouns. 用所有格形容词或所有格代词填空。

1. I have lost _____ pen. Can I borrow _____, please?
2. He has lost _____ umbrella. Will Linda lend him _____?
3. We have had _____ dinner. Have you had _____?
4. They told us about _____ school and we told them about _____.
5. I have eaten all _____ chocolates; can I have some of _____?
6. I left _____ umbrella at home, so she offered to lend me _____.
7. I'm riding _____ bike and they are riding _____.
8. Richard has a dog, and so have I. _____ dog is very big and mine is small.
9. I can't find _____ keys.
10. Ann has got _____ passport, but Tom hasn't got _____.

III. Make sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句造句。

1. a. This is his house.

   This house is his. It belongs to him.

   b. This is the old man's hat.

   _____

   c. This is the woman's coat.

   _____

d. This is the boy's coat.

_____

e. This is my bag.

_____

f. This is the lady's house.

_____

g. This is your writing paper.

_____

h. This is my wine.

_____

2. a. This is the boys' ball.

This ball is theirs. It belongs to them.

b. This is your book.

_____

c. This is the policemen's office.

_____

d. This is the girls' cat.

_____

e. This is the men's boat.

_____

f. This is the boys' room.

_____

g. This is our car.

_____

h. This is our key.

_____

3. a. These are the men's shoes.

These shoes are theirs. They belong to them.

b. These are the women's handbags.

_____

c. These are the children's toys.

_____

d. These are our letters.

_____

e. These are your watches.

_____

f. These are the postmen's bags.

_____

g. These are our newspapers.

_____

h. These are your envelopes.

_____

Lesson 98 Whose is it?
Whose are they?

它是谁的？
它们是谁的？

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. a. Whose is this bag? Is it Mary's? (John's bag)
No, it isn't hers. It's his.

b. Whose is this tie? Is it Frank's? (my tie)

c. Whose is this skirt? Is it mine? (Ann's skirt)

d. Whose is this flat? Is it Mr. and Mrs. Blake's? (our flat)

e. Whose is this television? Is it ours? (Stephen's television)

f. Whose is this shop? Is it Mr. Smith's? (Mr. and Mrs. Scott's shop)

g. Whose is this hat? Is it Jane's? (Sam's hat)

h. Whose is this beer? Is it mine? (Dave's beer)

2. a. Whose are these apples? Are they yours? (the woman's apples)

No, they aren't mine. They're hers.

b. Whose are these keys? Are they ours? (his keys)

c. Whose are these magazines? Are they Jane's? (the boys' magazines)

d. Whose are these shoes? Are they yours? (my brother's shoes)

e. Whose are these hammers? Are they ours? (the workers' hammers)

f. Whose are these cigarettes? Are they Jane's? (Jack's cigarettes)

g. Whose are these cases? Are they ours? (the tourists' cases)

h. Whose are these trousers? Are they your son's? (my daughter's trousers)

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Whose case is it? Is it Kathy's or yours?

It isn't hers. It's mine.

2. Whose clothes are these? Are they yours or theirs?

3. Whose car is this? Is it his or yours?

_____

4. Whose tickets are these? Are they ours or yours?

_____

5. Whose key is this? Is it Kathy's or yours?

_____

6. Whose cup is this? Is it Bob's or mine?

_____

7. Whose room is this? Is it theirs or ours?

_____

8. Whose newspapers are these? Are they yours or Ken's?

_____

Lesson 99 Ow!

啊哟！

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. he says/he feels sleepy

   He says that he feels sleepy.

2. she says/she feels ill

3. he thinks/he needs a haircut

4. I'm sure/it's going to snow tomorrow

5. the doctor says/you must stay in bed for three days

6. I'm sorry/he's got a bad cold

7. he believes/he can repair the car

8. she understands/I'm very tired and thirsty

9. he says/he usually gets up at seven

10. I know/Mr. Smith has just sold his house

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. You may make changes where necessary. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题，并做必要的改变。

1. What's the matter with you? (feel cold/be afraid/have got a temperature)

   I feel cold. I'm afraid that I've got a temperature.

2. What's the matter with him? (fall downstairs/think/have hurt his left leg)

   _____

3. What's the matter with them? (have got mumps/be afraid/can't go to school next week)

   _____

4. What's the matter with you? (have got a headache/believe/have got flu)

   _____

5. What's the matter with his car? (he/had a car crash yesterday/know/must take it to a garage)

   _____

6. What's the matter with your face? (I/shaved this morning and cut myself/think/must be careful next time)

   _____

7. What's the matter with her? (have a toothache/think/must see the dentist)

   _____

8. What's the matter with you? (fall off my bike and hurt my back/think/need an X-ray)

   _____

III. Make sentences according to the example. You may make changes where necessary. 仿照例句造句，并做必要的改变。

1. she/say/she/be very happy
   She says that she is very happy.
2. the children/say/they/already finish/their homework

   _____
3. he/believe/they/arrive/in an hour's time

   _____
4. I/be afraid/it/rain tomorrow

   _____
5. the doctor/be sure/he/have got measles

   _____
6. the mother/know/her baby/want/some milk

   _____
7. the teacher/think/students/be studying/hard

   _____
8. I/be sorry/I/be late today

   _____
9. we/understand/you/need/plenty of money

   _____
10. John/say/he/can drive

    _____

Lesson 100 He says that . . . She says that . . . They say that . . .

他/她/他们说……

I. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What does he say? ("I have a bad toothache.")
   He says that he has a bad toothache.
2. What do you say? ("I feel cold.")
   _____
3. What do they say? ("We will fly to London next Tuesday.")
   _____
4. What does she say? ("I am going to have an X-ray tomorrow.")
   _____
5. What does the teacher say? ("Your son is working very well.")
   _____
6. What do you say? ("We don't need any sugar.")
   _____
7. What does he say? ("I have already got a driver's licence.")
   _____
8. What do they say? ("It isn't very hot in our city in summer.")
   _____

9. What does she say? ("I must catch the ten fifteen train.")

_____

10. What does the doctor say? ("You'd better stay at home for two days.")

_____

II. Change the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Ann: I can swim very well in the sea.
   Ann says that she can swim very well in the sea.
2. The boys: We want an ice cream.

   _____
3. Mary: I've just emptied the basket.

   _____
4. Tom: I've never been to Sydney.

   _____
5. The postmen: We're going to have a holiday tomorrow.

   _____
6. My daughter: I need a watch.

   _____
7. Mrs. Scott: There isn't much cheese in the refrigerator.

   _____
8. The weatherman: It will be very hot tomorrow.

   _____
9. My friends: We've enjoyed ourselves very much.

   _____
10. The mechanic: I can't repair the car.

    _____

Lesson 101 A card from Jimmy

吉米的明信片

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. he says/he feels hot

   He says he feels hot.

2. she says/she is staying in Rome

   _____

3. I am sure/they enjoyed their holiday in Greece

   _____

4. I am afraid/it's going to be windy tomorrow

   _____

5. the doctor says/you must stay at home for a week

   _____

6. I am sorry/he hasn't got better

   _____

7. he believes/he can finish it in ten minutes

   _____

8. she hopes/she will go to university next year

   _____

9. he says/he usually goes to work by bus

   _____

10. I know/they need a large house

    _____

II. Rewrite the sentences, using a noun clause according to the example. 仿照例句用名词性从句改写下列句子。

1. "I feel cold. I'm afraid that I've got a temperature." (she/say)

   She says she feels cold, and she's afraid she's got a temperature.

2. "I've hurt my leg. I think that I shall have an X-ray tomorrow." (he/say)

   _____

   _____

3. "We've got mumps. We're afraid that we can't go to school next week." (they/say)

   _____

   _____

4. "I've got a headache. I believe that I've got flu." (she/say)

   _____

   _____

5. "I've just had a car crash. I know that I must drive carefully." (he/say)

   _____

   _____

6. "You'd better go back to the station now. I'm sure that the train will leave soon." (he/say)

   _____

   _____

7. "I can't read my boss's letter. I'm sorry that I haven't typed it yet." (she/say)

   _____

   _____

8. "We've already worked for two hours. We think that we need some coffee." (they/say)

_____

_____

9. "I'm late for the meeting. I'm sorry that my watch is five minutes slow." (he/say)

_____

_____

10. "I've never been to Paris. But I hope that I'll go there next year." (she/say)

_____

_____

Lesson 102 He says he . . . She says she . . . They say they . . .

他/她/他们说他/她/他们……

I. Choose the correct verb form from the words in brackets. 选择正确的动词形式填空。

1. I'm sorry I _____ (don't understand, won't understand) this sentence.
2. The man _____ (knew, knows) the train will be late.
3. She says I _____ (speak, have spoken) English very well.
4. The boys say they _____ (were, are) thirsty.
5. Mrs. Bell says she _____ (has been, is going) to the shop in an hour.
6. They _____ (say, said) he swims very well.
7. We hope it _____ (wasn't, won't be) hot next month.
8. Mary says she _____ (is having, is going to have) a haircut next week.
9. They say they _____ (waited, are waiting) for the bus now.
10. The boy says he _____ (don't want, doesn't want) a haircut.

II. Change the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Ann: I'm enjoying myself very much.

   Ann says she is enjoying herself very much.

2. The boys: We're tired and sleepy.

_____

3. Mary: I've just washed the dishes.

_____

4. Tom: I'm afraid I can't hear you.

_____

5. My daughter: I'll write a letter to you soon.

_____

6. My husband: I'll take the children to school.

_____

7. Lucy: I'm still cooking the evening meal.

_____

8. The postman: I think I need a big bag for the letters.

_____

9. My friends: We've already arrived in Shanghai.

_____

10. Peter: I feel ill.

_____

III. Add question tags to the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列附加疑问句。

1. You can't speak English, *can you?* _____
2. These aren't your books, _____
3. He won't be late, _____
4. It isn't going to rain tomorrow, _____
5. We don't need any money, _____
6. She doesn't live here, _____
7. He doesn't feel well, _____
8. You aren't tired, _____

9. We haven't finished our work, _____

10. She has never been to Berlin, _____

11. He isn't having lunch now, _____

12. She hasn't got mumps, _____

Lesson 103 The French test

法语考试

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Could he read and write at the age of five?
   He could read, but he couldn't write.
2. Could you play football and tennis at the age of ten?
   _____
3. Could she swim and dance at the age of eight?
   _____
4. Could he ride a bike and drive a car at the age of thirteen?
   _____
5. Could you speak English and French at school?
   _____
6. Could you wash clothes and cook dishes at the age of ten?
   _____
7. Could he do his homework and his sister's last night?
   _____
8. Could you buy a car and a house three years ago?
   _____

II. Complete the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列句子。

1. He can run fast now. (ten years ago)
   He could run fast ten years ago, too.

2. I can swim five miles now. (last year)

_____

3. He can answer all the questions now. (yesterday)

_____

4. She can drive well now. (two years ago)

_____

5. I can write English well now. (at school)

_____

6. He can repair a car now. (five years ago)

_____

7. She can play the piano now. (at the age of eight)

_____

8. He can tell the exact time now. (at the age of six)

_____

III. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Have you eaten the pear? (hard)

No, it was too hard to eat.

b. Has he drunk the soup? (hot)

_____

c. Have you bought the suit? (expensive)

_____

d. Have they answered the question? (difficult)

_____

e. Has she taken the medicine? (bitter)

_____

f. Have you lifted the box? (heavy)

_____

g. Has he eaten the cake? (stale)

_____

h. Have they read the book? (long)

_____

2. a. Can he reach the wall? (high)

No, it's too high for him to reach.

b. Can they lift the bag? (heavy)

_____

c. Can you remember the story? (long)

_____

d. Can she buy the dress? (expensive)

_____

e. Can he see the letter "a"? (small)

_____

f. Can they move the furniture? (heavy)

_____

g. Can you drink the soup? (hot)

_____

h. Can they do that exercise? (difficult)

_____

IV. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Why couldn't he go to school? (old)

He wasn't old enough to go to school.

2. Why couldn't she clean the blackboard? (tall)

_____

3. Why couldn't he carry the case? (strong)

_____

4. Why couldn't she win the prize? (lucky)

_____

5. Why couldn't he ride a bike? (big)

_____

6. Why couldn't you go to sleep? (tired)

_____

7. Why couldn't they pass the test? (clever)

_____

8. Why couldn't she open the windows? (tall)

_____

9. Why couldn't you go to work? (well)

_____

10. Why couldn't you buy a new car? (rich)

_____

Lesson 104 Too, very, enough

太、非常、足够

I. Combine each pair of sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. a. He was very young. He couldn't go to school.
   He was too young to go to school.
   b. The man was very old. He couldn't swim in the sea.
   _____
   c. She was very ill. She couldn't go to work yesterday.
   _____
   d. The little dog was very weak. He couldn't walk.
   _____
   e. The news was very good. It couldn't be true.
   _____
   f. The boys were very tired. They couldn't climb the wall.
   _____
   g. We were very late. We couldn't catch the train.
   _____
   h. I was very stupid. I couldn't understand the maths problem.
   _____
2. a. The box was too heavy. He couldn't lift it.
   The box was too heavy for him to lift.
   b. The food was too hot. They couldn't eat it.
   _____

c. The trousers were too short. He couldn't wear them.

_____

d. Her handwriting was too bad. We couldn't read it.

_____

e. The work was too hard. They couldn't do it.

_____

f. The shelf was too high. I couldn't reach it.

_____

g. The questions were too difficult. They couldn't answer them.

_____

h. The bag was too big. She couldn't carry it.

_____

II. Combine each pair of sentences according to the examples.
仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. a. The shelf is very low. He can reach it.

The shelf is low enough for him to reach.

b. The table is very small. They can move it.

_____

c. The boxes are very light. He can lift them.

_____

d. The questions are very easy. They can understand them.

_____

e. The stereo is very loud. They can hear it.

_____

f. The pear is very soft. The old woman can eat it.

_____

g. The juice is very sweet. You can drink it.

_____

h. The wall is very low. He can climb it.

_____

2. a. The knife is very sharp. It can cut the beef.

The knife is sharp enough to cut the beef.

b. I'm very tired. I can sleep for twenty-four hours.

_____

c. He's very thirsty. He can drink four glasses of water.

_____

d. I'm very hungry. I can eat five cakes.

_____

e. He is big. He can ride a bike.

_____

f. He's very rich. He can buy the house.

_____

g. She's very lucky. She can win the prize.

_____

h. He's very strong. He can move the bookcase.

_____

Lesson 105 Full of mistakes

错误百出

I. Rewrite the sentences, using the words given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词改写下列句子。

1. Close all the doors. (he/want/her)
   He wants her to close all the doors.
2. Sweep the floor. (tell/her)
   Tell her to sweep the floor.
3. Put away the magazines. (I/want/him)
   _____
4. Shut all the windows. (she/want/me)
   _____
5. Take out your pens and pencils. (tell/them)
   _____
6. Give me the newspaper. (he/want/me)
   _____
7. Open your books. (tell/them)
   _____
8. Stay there. (tell/him)
   _____
9. Bring it to me. (tell/her)
   _____
10. Be careful. (she/want/you)
    _____
11. Read it to me. (I/want/you)
    _____

12. Stand up. (tell/them)

_____

13. Have a drink. (she/want/him)

_____

14. Work hard. (tell/him)

_____

15. Turn on the lights. (he/want/you)

_____

16. Turn off the cooker. (tell/him)

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences, using the words given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的词改写下列句子。

1. Don't stop. (tell/them)
   Tell them not to stop.
2. Don't swim in the river. (I/not want/you)
   I don't want you to swim in the river.
3. Don't be lazy. (tell/him)

   _____

4. Don't forget the telephone number. (tell/her)

   _____

5. Don't be late. (he/not want/you)

   _____

6. Don't wait for me. (he/not want/us)

   _____

7. Don't open the window. (she/not want/him)

   _____

8. Don't break the vase. (she/not want/you)

   _____

9. Don't drive too fast. (tell/him)

_____

10. Don't lose the money. (tell/them)

_____

11. Don't hurt yourself. (tell/her)

_____

12. Don't miss your train. (he/not want/them)

_____

13. Don't cut yourself. (tell/him)

_____

14. Don't use a pencil. (he/not want/you)

_____

15. Don't fall. (tell/them)

_____

16. Don't paint the door yellow. (she/not want/him)

_____

Lesson 106 I want you/him/her/them to ...
Tell him/her/them to ...

我要你/他/她/他们……
告诉他/她/他们……

I. Rewrite the sentences, using the words given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词改写下列句子。

1. Shut the door, not the window. (you)
   I want you to shut the door. I don't want you to shut the window.

2. Walk on the pavement, not on the road. (them)

3. Write your answers on the answer sheet, not on the test paper. (you)

4. Do your homework at home, not at school. (him)

5. Paint it blue, not red. (him)

6. Write your name at the top of the paper, not at the bottom. (her)

7. Speak English, not Chinese. (you)

8. Drive slowly, not quickly. (him)

_____

9. Use a pen, not a pencil. (her)

_____

10. Come home early, not late. (her)

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences, using the words given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词改写下列句子。

1. Be careful. Don't make any mistakes. (him)
   Tell him to be careful. Tell him not to make any mistakes.
2. Spell the words correctly. Don't spell them wrongly. (them)

   _____

3. Be careful. Don't fall off the chair. (her)

   _____

4. Keep the book clean. Don't make it dirty. (him)

   _____

5. Use a black pen. Don't use a blue pen. (them)

   _____

6. Put the vase on the table. Don't put it on the floor. (her)

   _____

7. Stay in the room. Don't leave the room. (her)

   _____

8. Remember your umbrella. Don't leave it in the restaurant. (him)

   _____

9. Walk slowly. Don't fall down. (him)

_____

10. Come to school early. Don't be late. (them)

_____

Lesson 107 It's too small.

太小了。

I. Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives. 写出下列形容词的比较级和最高级形式。

1. hot _____ _____
2. heavy _____ _____
3. large _____ _____
4. big _____ _____
5. thin _____ _____
6. new _____ _____
7. nice _____ _____
8. easy _____ _____
9. lazy _____ _____
10. tall _____ _____

II. Comment on each statement according to the examples. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. His sister is thin but he is very thin.
   Yes, he's thinner than his sister.
2. This table is big but that table is very big.
   Yes, that table is bigger than this one.
3. His wife is fat but he is very fat.
   _____
4. Her sister is pretty but she is very pretty.
   _____

5. That question is easy but this question is very easy.

_____

6. These baskets are full but those baskets are very full.

_____

7. That picture is nice but this picture is very nice.

_____

8. That road is wide but this road is very wide.

_____

9. Her dress is smart but her sister's dress is very smart.

_____

10. Those apples are big but these apples are very big.

_____

11. These people are lazy but those people are very lazy.

_____

12. It was hot yesterday but it's very hot today.

_____

13. The days in autumn are short but the days in winter are very short.

_____

14. These knives are sharp but those knives are very sharp.

_____

III. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. All the chairs are low, aren't they?

Yes, but this one is the lowest. It's the lowest of all the chairs.

2. All the questions are easy, aren't they?

_____

3. All the books are new, aren't they?

_____

4. All the pencils are short, aren't they?

_____

5. All the pictures are nice, aren't they?

_____

6. All the policemen are strong, aren't they?

_____

7. All the oranges are sweet, aren't they?

_____

8. All the children are clever, aren't they?

_____

Lesson 108 How do they compare?

它们的比较级和最高级是什么?

I. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. the red car/the blue car/the white car (fast/of all the cars)
   The red car is fast, the blue car is faster, and the white car is the fastest of all the cars.
2. the men/the women/the little children (happy/of all the people)

   _____
3. Sam's suitcase/Ann's suitcase/Jack's suitcase (heavy/of all the suitcases)

   _____
4. Jane/David/Tony (tall/in the class)

   _____
5. my shoes/your shoes/her shoes (small/of all the shoes)

   _____
6. the dress/the shoes/the hat (cheap/in the shop)

   _____
7. this watch/that watch/the blue watch (nice/I've ever seen)

   _____
8. the white bird/the black bird/the black and white bird (big/I've ever seen)

   _____

9. the Summer Palace/the Imperial Palace/the Great Wall (great/I've ever seen)

_____

10. this carpet/that carpet/the carpet in the living room (lovely/in the house)

_____

II. Make dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句编写对话。

1. oranges/sweet

Those oranges are sweet, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are sweeter.

2. apples/big

_____

_____

3. tomatoes/fresh

_____

_____

4. peaches/nice

_____

_____

5. dresses/smart

_____

_____

6. eggs/large

_____

_____

Lesson 109 A good idea

好主意

I. Write the comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives. 写出下列形容词的比较级和最高级形式。

1. good _____ _____
2. many/much _____ _____
3. dirty _____ _____
4. clean _____ _____
5. few _____ _____
6. slow _____ _____
7. bad _____ _____
8. light _____ _____
9. little _____ _____
10. small _____ _____

II. Complete the dialogues according to the examples. 仿照例句完成下列对话。

1. a. Would you like some butter?

Yes, please. I'd like some butter. I've got very little.

Would you like some milk?

No, thank you. I don't want any milk. I still have a little.

b. Would you like some fruit?

_____

Would you like some soup?

_____

c. Would you like some ink?

_____

Would you like some glue?

_____

d. Would you like some tea?

_____

Would you like some sugar?

_____

e. Would you like some jam?

_____

Would you like some honey?

_____

2. a. Would you like some biscuits?

Yes, please. I'd like some biscuits. I've got very few.

Would you like some cakes?

No, thank you. I don't want any cakes. I still have a few.

b. Would you like some eggs?

_____

Would you like some apples?

_____

c. Would you like some flowers?

_____

Would you like some vegetables?

_____

d. Would you like some pens?

_____

Would you like some pencils?

_____

e. Would you like some potatoes?

_____

Would you like some lettuces?

_____

III. Fill in the blanks with "little", "a little", "few" or "a few". 用 little, a little, few 或 a few 填空。

1. Would you like some tickets? I have _____ to spare.
2. He is very rich, but he is so mean that _____ people know he is rich.
3. I've got very _____ money. Could you lend me _____?
4. She is not popular; _____ people like her.
5. He didn't like the job, so he left the company after _____ months.
6. May I have _____ more sugar in my tea, please?
7. We haven't finished yet; there is still _____ more work to do.
8. I made very _____ mistakes in the test.
9. _____ flowers can make a room look brighter.
10. We have _____ milk left. We need to buy some.
11. There are only _____ cigarettes in the box.
12. There is only _____ tea left in the teapot.
13. Your homework today is better than it was yesterday; you have made only _____ mistakes.
14. Jane gave me _____ help with my work.

IV. Make dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句编写对话。

1. I/got a good mark in the exam/John/Jane

I got a good mark in the exam.

You're right. But John got a better mark. And Jane got the best mark of all.

2. I/made very few mistakes/John/Jane

3. that restaurant/is very bad/the Small Café/the Sun Restaurant

4. she/earns very little money/he/his brother

5. I/have a lot of friends/Jenny/Robert

6. Charlotte/makes good coffee/my sister/my mother

Lesson 110 How do they compare?

它们的比较级和最高级是什么?

I. Make sentences, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息造句。

Jane	Mary	Ann
(have) three books	five books	eight books
(have bought) four skirts	six skirts	two skirts
(have got) two handbags	one handbag	three handbags
(have) sixty dollars	one hundred and fifty dollars	one hundred dollars
(had) seven bars of chocolate	four bars of chocolate	three bars of chocolate
(ate) two slices of bread	one slice of bread	four slices of bread
(drank) one bottle of beer	four bottles of beer	two bottles of beer
(have written) two letters	three letters	four letters
(had) one piece of steak	two pieces of steak	three pieces of steak
(made) two mistakes	five mistakes	three mistakes

1. *Mary has more books than Jane does, but she has fewer books than Ann does.*
   Ann has the most books of the three, and Jane has the fewest.
2. _____

3. _____

_____

4. _____

_____

5. _____

_____

6. _____

_____

7. _____

_____

8. _____

_____

9. _____

_____

10. _____

_____

II. Answer the questions, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息回答下列问题。

	English	Chinese	Science
Sam	89	79	88
David	78	64	73
Sophie	80	82	84
Hans	66	65	69
Ken	73	88	34
Tim	92	70	71
Bob	85	90	86
Kathy	82	94	87

1. Who are better at Science than Bob?

   Sam and Kathy are better at Science than Bob.

2. Who is the best at Science in this class?

3. Who is the worst at Science in this class?

4. Who are worse at Science than Tim?

5. Who are better at English than Bob?

6. Who are worse at English than Sophie?

7. Who is the worst at English in this class?

8. Who is the best at English in this class?

9. Who are better at Chinese than Sam?

10. Who are worse at Chinese than Tim?

11. Who is the worst at Chinese in this class?

12. Who is the best at Chinese in this class?

Lesson 111 The most expensive model

最昂贵的型号

I. Put the adjectives given in the comparative or superlative form. 用所给形容词的比较级或最高级形式填空。

1. Ann is _____ (old) than Hans.
2. Summer is _____ (warm) than winter.
3. Summer is the _____ (warm) of the four seasons.
4. These cars are the _____ (expensive) in China.
5. An aeroplane is _____ (fast) than a train, and a train is _____ (fast) than a car, so an aeroplane is the _____ (fast) of the three.
6. This is the _____ (bad) coffee I have ever tried.
7. You are no _____ (bad) than I am at singing. I think I am the _____ (bad) singer in the world!
8. Your work is much _____ (good) than it was last week.

II. Make sentences, using the information given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的信息造句。

1. That book is interesting but this book is very interesting.

This book is more interesting than that one.

That book is less interesting than this one.

2. This girl is beautiful but that girl is very beautiful.

3. That armchair is comfortable but this armchair is very comfortable.

_____

_____

4. The girl is careless but the boy is very careless.

_____

_____

5. The first question is difficult but the second question is very difficult.

_____

_____

6. My son is hard-working but my daughter is very hard-working.

_____

_____

7. That dress is expensive but this dress is very expensive.

_____

_____

8. This driver is careful but that driver is very careful.

_____

_____

III. Make sentences, using the information given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给的信息造句。

1. the chair on the left/the chair in the middle (comfortable/of all)

The chair on the left is the most comfortable of all the chairs, and the chair in the middle is the least comfortable.

2. this picture/that picture (beautiful/I've ever seen)

This picture is the most beautiful I've ever seen, and that picture is the least beautiful.

3. your book/his book (interesting/I've ever read)

4. this engineer/that engineer (hard-working/I've ever met)

5. this hairdresser/that hairdresser (careful/of all)

6. the red car/the black car (expensive/I've ever seen)

7. the French paper/the Maths paper (difficult/of all)

8. this man/that man (important/of all)

IV. Make sentences, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词造句。

1. our room/dirty/your room/not as clean

Our room is dirtier than your room.

Our room is not as clean as your room.

2. this watch/expensive/that watch/not as cheap

_____

_____

3. his handwriting/bad/her handwriting/not as good

_____

_____

4. a boat/slow/a car/not as fast

_____

_____

5. a cigar/big/a cigarette/not as small

_____

_____

6. this book/thin/that book/not as thick

_____

_____

7. this question/difficult/that question/not as easy

_____

_____

Lesson 112 How do they compare?

它们的比较级和最高级是什么?

	Age	Weight	Height
Mary	14	45 kg	1.63 m
Marie	16	55 kg	1.68 m
Carol	16	47 kg	1.63 m
Sophie	17	40 kg	1.60 m
William	12	45 kg	1.60 m
Jill	16	47 kg	1.65 m
Scott	16	55 kg	1.65 m
Jim	17	57 kg	1.68 m

I. Answer the questions about the children's ages according to the example. 仿照例句用表格里提供的学生年龄的信息回答下列问题。

1. Which girls are as old as Marie?
   Carol and Jill are as old as Marie.
2. Which boys are not as old as Jim?
   _____
3. Which girl is not as old as Carol?
   _____

4. Which boy is not as old as Scott?

_____

5. Which boy is not as old as Mary?

_____

6. Which boy is as old as Jill?

_____

7. Which girls are not as old as Sophie?

_____

8. Which boy is as old as Sophie?

_____

II. Finish the sentences about the children's weight. 用表格里提供的学生体重的信息完成下列各句。

1. Mary is as heavy as _____.
2. Carol is not as heavy as _____.
3. William is not _____.
4. Jill is as _____.
5. Scott is not _____.
6. Marie is not _____.
7. Marie is as _____.
8. Mary is not _____.
9. Sophie is not _____.
10. Jill is not _____.

III. Make sentences about the children's height according to the examples. 仿照例句用表格里提供的学生身高的信息造句。

1. Mary is *as tall as Carol*. _____
2. Mary is *not as tall as Marie*. _____
3. Marie is _____.

4. Carol is _____.
5. Sophie is _____.
6. William is _____.
7. Jill is _____.
8. Scott is _____.
9. Jim is _____.
10. Scott is _____.

Lesson 113 Small change

零钱

I. Give correct replies to the sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. a. Ken can speak English. *So can I.*
   b. He can read English. _____
   c. She had a swim yesterday. _____
   d. Bob is tall. _____
   e. David will go. _____
   f. He is learning English. _____
   g. She has read that book. _____
2. a. Sam can't speak Chinese. *Neither can I.*
   b. She can't write German. _____
   c. They don't like chocolate. _____
   d. Jack won't sing. _____
   e. Tony didn't go. _____
   f. John couldn't hear it. _____
   g. Mary hasn't read it. _____

II. Join the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. They all smiled. I smiled, too.
   They all smiled, and so did I.
2. He is tall. You are tall, too.
   _____

3. My shoes are dirty. My trousers are dirty, too.

_____

4. This pencil is blunt. That one is blunt, too.

_____

5. You must come to the party. Your husband must come, too.

_____

6. He went away. His father went away, too.

_____

7. I like tomatoes. My friends like tomatoes, too.

_____

8. She goes to school every day. Her sister goes to school every day, too.

_____

9. He sits in the front. His brother sits there, too.

_____

10. I will have a haircut. My father will have one, too.

_____

11. You have finished. We have finished, too.

_____

12. He is here. His friends are here, too.

_____

III. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. She doesn't know. /I

She doesn't know, and I don't know, either.

She doesn't know, and neither do I.

2. I don't want to go. /she

3. They haven't done their homework. /he

4. I didn't sleep well last night. /she

5. This shop doesn't sell fruit. /that one

6. The cat won't drink tea. /the dog

7. She hasn't seen him. /we

8. You aren't very old. /he

9. Your town isn't very big. /mine

10. She hasn't got any ink. /I

IV. Complete the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列句子。

1. I had some ice in my beer but Peter *didn't have any. He had no ice in his beer. He had none in his beer.*
2. Mrs. Smith bought some beef but Mrs. Scott _____
3. David wants some envelopes but John _____
4. I have got some red ink but my friend _____
5. We have got some homework but they _____
6. Tom needs some boxes but Peter _____
7. The big room has windows but the little room _____
8. She bought some new dresses but I _____
9. We ate some pears but he _____
10. Hans had some small change but Jim _____

Lesson 114　I've got none.

我没有。

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Are there any tins in the cupboard?

No, there aren't any tins. There are no tins. There are none.

b. Are there any flowers in the vase?

c. Is there any water in the kettle?

d. Is there any butter on the bread?

e. Are there any eggs in the basket?

f. Is there any paper on the table?

g. Is there any ink in the ink bottle?

h. Are there any matches in the box?

2. a. Have you got any oil?

No, I haven't got any oil. I've got no oil. I've got none.

b. Have they bought any biscuits?

_____

c. Have you had any fruit?

_____

d. Has he got any tobacco?

_____

e. Have you got any vegetables?

_____

f. Has she had any food?

_____

g. Has the dog eaten any bones?

_____

h. Have we bought any soap?

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Can you give me some apples, please?

I'm sorry. I've got no apples. I've got none.

2. Can you give me some sweets, please?

_____

3. Can you give me some writing paper, please?

_____

4. Can you give me some water, please?

_____

5. Can you give me some matches, please?

_____

6. Can you give me some rice, please?

_____

7. Can you give me some flowers, please?

_____

8. Can you give me some chalk, please?

_____

9. Can you give me some money, please?

_____

10. Can you give me some magazines, please?

_____

Lesson 115　Knock, knock!

敲敲门！

I. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. What did you see?

I didn't see anything. I saw nothing.

b. What did you say?

_____

c. What did you hear?

_____

d. What did you write?

_____

e. What did you read?

_____

f. What did you drink?

_____

g. What did you do?

_____

h. What did you eat?

_____

i. What did you lose?

_____

j. What did you buy?

_____

2. a. Who did you see?

I didn't see anybody. I saw nobody.

b. Who did you tell?

c. Who did you hear?

d. Who did you ask?

e. Who did you meet?

f. Who did you help?

g. Who did you find?

h. Who did you telephone?

i. Who did you remember?

j. Who did you write to?

3. a. What's beautiful in the house?

Everything in the house is beautiful.

b. Who's absent today? (present)

Nobody is absent today. Everybody is present.

c. What's cheap in the shop?

d. Who's lazy in the class? (hard-working)

e. Who's short in the family? (tall)

_____

f. What's dirty in the bag?

_____

g. What's new in the box?

_____

h. Who's ill in the office? (very well)

_____

i. What's fresh at the greengrocer's?

_____

j. Who's unhappy at the party? (happy)

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Is there anything in the glass?

Yes, there is. There is something in the glass.

No, there isn't. There isn't anything in the glass. There is nothing in the glass.

2. Is there anyone in the office?

Yes, there is. There is someone in the office.

No, there isn't. There isn't anyone in the office. There is no one in the office.

3. Is there anything in the water?

_____

_____

_____

4. Is there anyone in the house?

5. Is there anything in the basket?

6. Is there anyone in the building?

7. Is there anything in the case?

8. Is there anyone in the library?

9. Is there anything in the bag?

10. Is there anyone in the kitchen?

III. Fill in the blanks with "somewhere", "anywhere", "everywhere" or "nowhere". 用 somewhere, anywhere, everywhere 或 nowhere 填空。

What're you doing now? You're looking for something, aren't you?

Yes, I'm looking for my watch. I left it _____ this morning.

Did you look for it in your office?

I looked _____ in my office, but I couldn't find it _____.

Can it be _____ in your room?

I'm sure it must be _____ in my room, and I've looked _____ in the room for an hour, but still I can't find it _____. It isn't in my office and it isn't in my room. It's _____! I've lost it!

Lesson 116 Every, no, any and some

每一、无、若干和一些

I. Fill in the blanks with compounds of "every", "no", "any" or "some". 用 every, no, any 或 some 的复合词填空。

1. There is _____ interesting in the newspaper today. You must read it!
2. Can _____ read French? We've got _____ here in French, but we can't understand _____ in French.
3. He went _____ yesterday. He stayed at home.
4. I know _____ here. I'm a stranger myself.
5. Is there _____ cheap in the shop? I haven't got much money.
6. Are you going _____ now?
   Yes, I'm going _____ for lunch.
7. Mrs. Jones is very lazy. _____ in her house is dirty and untidy.
8. They are looking for you _____. They've got _____ important to tell you.
9. He goes _____ by aeroplane. He thinks an aeroplane is the fastest.
10. _____ helped me. I did it myself.
11. These poor people have _____ to live. They have no home.
12. I can remember _____ about it. I've forgotten all about it.

13. There must be _____ in the room. I heard a noise.
14. Can you see _____ in the sky?
    Yes, some stars.
15. I'm very thirsty. I want to buy _____ to drink.
16. Have you seen Mike?
    Yes, I saw him in front of the library just now. He must be _____ in the library now.

II. Rewrite the sentences according to the examples. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. There isn't anything in the desk.
   There's nothing in the desk.
2. There isn't anybody in the room.
   There's nobody in the room.
3. There isn't anyone in the house.
   There's no one in the house.
4. There isn't anything on the table.
   _____
5. There isn't anybody in the school.
   _____
6. There isn't anyone in the car.
   _____
7. There isn't anything in the room.
   _____
8. There isn't anybody in the building.
   _____
9. There isn't anyone in the street.
   _____

10. There isn't anything in the box.

_____

11. There isn't anybody in the library.

_____

12. There isn't anyone in the classroom.

_____

III. Complete the dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列对话。

1. I'd like some more butter, please.

I'm sorry. There isn't any left.

We haven't eaten all of it, have we?

Yes, we have. There's none left.

2. I'd like some more milk, please.

_____

We haven't drunk all of it, have we?

_____

3. I'd like some more grapes, please.

_____

We haven't eaten all of them, have we?

_____

4. I'd like some more paper, please.

_____

We haven't used all of it, have we?

_____

5. I'd like some more envelopes, please.

_____

We haven't used all of them, have we?

_____

6. I'd like some more bread, please.

_____

We haven't eaten all of it, have we?

_____

Lesson 117 Tommy's breakfast

汤米的早餐

I. Combine each pair of sentences, using "while" according to the examples. 仿照例句用 **while** 连接下列各句。

1. I was speaking to Mrs. Li yesterday. Her son started to cry.
   While I was speaking to Mrs. Li yesterday, her son started to cry.
2. He was crossing the street two days ago. He slipped and fell down.
   _____
3. I was having a bath last night. The telephone rang.
   _____
4. She was having dinner yesterday evening. Someone knocked at the door.
   _____
5. She was cutting the meat this morning. She cut her finger.
   _____
6. The child hurt himself. He was climbing a tree.
   The child hurt himself while he was climbing a tree.
7. Someone came to see me. We were watching television last night.
   _____
8. Tom fell asleep. He was sitting in his armchair.
   _____

9. The policeman saw an accident. He was walking down the street.

_____

10. Someone turned on the stereo. We were reading in the library.

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences in Exercise I, using "when" in place of "while" according to the example. 仿照例句改写练习 I 中的句子，用 **when** 替换 **while**。

1. *When I was speaking to Mrs. Li yesterday, her son started to cry.*
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

III. Make sentences, using "just as" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **just as** 造句。

1. I/take off my coat/the telephone/ring
   Just as I was taking off my coat, the telephone rang.
2. he/leave the office/his assistant/come in

   _____
3. I/walk out of the building/it/begin to rain

   _____

4. she/open the door/someone/come in

_____

5. I/go to sleep/I/hear a loud noise from the road

_____

6. we/go upstairs/they/come downstairs

_____

7. he/lean out of the window/something/drop on his head

_____

8. he/light a cigarette/someone/come and tell him not to smoke

_____

Lesson 118 What were you doing?

你那时正在做什么？

I. Complete the sentences with either the past simple tense or the past continuous tense of the verb given. 用所给动词的一般过去时或过去进行时形式填空。

1. While she _____ (sit) in the library, someone _____ (throw) a letter through the window.
2. When the telephone _____ (ring), she _____ (do) her housework.
3. When I _____ (leave) the party, the people _____ (enjoy) themselves.
4. He _____ (not go) to school yesterday because he _____ (not feel) very well.
5. Just as the bus _____ (begin) to move, he _____ (run) quickly and _____ (jump) on it.
6. The teacher _____ (go) into the classroom while the boy _____ (draw) on the blackboard.
7. She _____ (break) her ankle while she _____ (play) tennis.
8. While the teacher _____ (talk) to us, a boy _____ (bring) him a note.
9. When my brother _____ (come) into the room, I _____ (telephone) Mary.
10. I _____ (listen) to the stereo when you _____ (knock) at the door the first time, so I _____ (not hear) you.

11. I'm afraid there's no more cake left. We _____ (eat) it all this morning.
12. While the train _____ (still move), a lot of people suddenly _____ (jump) out of their seats.
13. While the children _____ (play) outside, their mother _____ (cook) their dinner.
14. It _____ (rain) heavily when we _____ (leave) the house, but it _____ (clear) up later.
15. We _____ (walk) home this evening when we _____ (see) an accident involving a car and a bike.
16. Because he _____ (not want) the noise to disturb his daughter while she _____ (study), he _____ (shut) the door.

II. Complete the sentences, using your own words. 用自己的话完成下列句子。

1. While I was having my breakfast this morning, _____
_____
2. I was having a bath when _____
_____
3. While I was putting on shoes this morning, _____
_____
4. When I was walking to school this morning, _____
_____
5. While our class was having an English lesson, _____
_____
6. Just as I was leaving the classroom after class, _____
_____
7. _____
while I was walking home yesterday.

8. _____

when I was lying in bed last night.

9. _____

when it started to rain.

10. _____

while we were playing football.

11. _____

when I was doing my homework at home.

12. _____

while I was watching television with my friends.

Lesson 119 A true story

一个真实的故事

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Why didn't you clean the car?
   Because I had already cleaned it.
2. Why didn't you post the letter?
   _____
3. Why didn't you give the book back to him?
   _____
4. Why didn't you sweep the floor?
   _____
5. Why didn't you finish your homework?
   _____
6. Why didn't you eat the steak?
   _____
7. Why didn't you wash the dishes?
   _____
8. Why didn't you telephone your mother?
   _____

II. Complete the sentences according to Jimmy's diary. 根据吉米的日记完成下列句子。

7:00	Got up.
7:10	Washed and dressed.

7:30	Had breakfast.
7:45	Left home and went to school.
7:50	Arrived at school. Walked into classroom.
7:55	The teacher came into classroom.
8:00	English lesson began.
8:45	English lesson ended.
8:55	Maths lesson began.
9:40	Maths lesson ended.
9:45	Ate bread and drank coffee.
10:00	Science lesson began.
10:45	Science lesson ended.
10:55	Chinese lesson began.
11:40	Chinese lesson ended. End of morning session.

1. a. After Jimmy had got up, *he washed and dressed.*
   b. After Jimmy had washed and dressed, _____
   c. After Jimmy had had his breakfast, _____
   d. After Jimmy had walked into the classroom, _____
   e. After the teacher had come into the classroom, _____
   f. After the English lesson had ended, _____
   g. After the Maths lesson had ended, _____
   h. After Jimmy had eaten bread and drunk coffee, _____
   i. After the Science lesson had ended, _____
   j. After the Chinese lesson had ended, _____
2. a. Before Jimmy washed and dressed, *he had got up.*
   b. Before Jimmy had his breakfast, _____
   c. Before Jimmy left home, _____
   d. Before the teacher came into the classroom, _____
   e. Before the English lesson began, _____
   f. Before the Maths lesson began, _____

g. Before Jimmy ate bread and drank coffee, _____

h. Before the Science lesson began, _____

i. Before the Chinese lesson began, _____

j. Before the morning session ended, _____

III. Combine each pair of sentences according to the example.
仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. I washed. I cleaned my teeth.
When I had washed, I cleaned my teeth.

2. She corrected the students' papers. She went to bed.
_____

3. I cleaned my teeth. I had breakfast.
_____

4. The bus stopped. Tom got on.
_____

5. They sold their house. They went to a new town.
_____

6. They took their exams. They had a big party.
_____

7. The rain stopped. They all went out.
_____

8. She read the letter. She told us the news.
_____

9. Mary bought a ticket. She waited for the train.
_____

10. She finished her work. She went out for dinner.
_____

Lesson 120 It had already happened.

它已经发生了。

I. Combine each pair of sentences according to the example. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. The play started. I turned on the television.
   When I turned on the television, the play had already started.
2. The class started. Bob reached school.
   _____
3. They had dinner. I got back home.
   _____
4. The rain stopped. She opened her umbrella.
   _____
5. The thief ran away. The policeman arrived.
   _____
6. Mrs. Smith finished cooking. Her husband went to help.
   _____
7. They took him to hospital. I got to his home.
   _____
8. I had driving lessons for three weeks. I got my licence.
   _____

II. Complete the sentences by adding "just" with the past perfect tense of the verbs given. 用 **just** 和所给动词的过去完成时形式填空。

1. I _____ (reach) the gate when someone closed it.

2. When the teacher asked us to stop writing, we _____ (finish).
3. I _____ (leave) the house when it began to rain.
4. I _____ (open) the newspaper when the telephone rang.
5. I _____ (answer) the telephone when the doorbell rang.
6. I _____ (sit) down when the telephone rang again.
7. When they went into the cinema, the film _____ (begin).
8. He took the picture down when I _____ (put) it up on the wall.

III. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. he/make a bookcase/be proud of himself
   He had made a bookcase so he was proud of himself. He had never been so proud of himself before.
2. he/work for twelve hours/be tired
   _____
3. she/run for five miles/be thirsty
   _____
4. he/cook a meal for his family/be proud of himself
   _____
5. she/fail the exam/be sad
   _____
6. he/pass the English test/be excited
   _____

Lesson 121 The man in a hat

戴帽子的男士

I. Complete the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句完成下列句子。

1. A teacher is *someone who/that teaches* (teach).
2. A nurse is _____ (look after sick people).
3. A tailor is _____ (make clothes).
4. A cook is _____ (cook food).
5. A mechanic is _____ (repair machines).
6. A sailor is _____ (sail on a ship).
7. A carpenter is _____ (make things with wood).
8. A gardener is _____ (work in a garden).

II. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. I saw those men yesterday. (Those/the men)
   Those are the men who(m)/that I saw yesterday.
2. She served me last week. (That/the assistant)
   _____
3. That mechanic repaired my car. (That/the mechanic)
   _____
4. We visited that house a month ago. (That/the house)
   _____

5. That dog chased our cat on Saturday. (That/the dog)

_____

6. I bought these magazines yesterday. (These/magazines)

_____

7. My father wants to buy that car. (That/the car)

_____

8. The policeman caught that thief last night. (That/thief)

_____

III. Fill in the blanks with "that", "which", "who" or "whom". 用 that, which, who 或 whom 填空。

1. The man _____ is locking the door is Mr. Smith.
2. The pencil _____ he was writing with was broken.
3. The knife _____ you lent me is not very sharp.
4. The girl _____ told me the news is not here now.
5. I have lost the watch _____ my father gave me.
6. The boy _____ is on the bike is Mike.
7. The person _____ I was speaking to was my uncle.
8. The men _____ I met could not help me.
9. The bus _____ takes us to school often breaks down.
10. The friends _____ she had come to the party with left just now.
11. The table _____ he was standing on has a broken leg.
12. The man _____ I got the information from is not here.
13. This is the camera _____ I took a lot of photographs with.
14. The person _____ he asked first did not know.

15. The one _____ answers first will win a prize.
16. I have found the pen _____ I lost.
17. The trees _____ they climbed were not very tall.
18. The books _____ are on my table belong to my brother.

Lesson 122 Who (whom), which and that

关系代词

I. Combine each pair of sentences, using "which" or "that" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **which** 或 **that** 合并下列句子。

1. The book is very interesting. /I'm reading the book.
   The book which /that I'm reading is very interesting.
2. The books were very expensive. /I bought the books.
   _____
3. The trees fell down. /The trees were big.
   _____
4. The dresses were too expensive. /She wanted the dresses.
   _____
5. She wants a doll for her birthday. /The doll walks and talks.
   _____
6. I've lost the umbrella. /I bought the umbrella last week.
   _____
7. I passed the exams. /The exams were not very difficult.
   _____
8. This is the car. /I've just bought the car.
   _____
9. The street is called Fifth Avenue. /We are walking along

the street.

10. The store is across the street. /The store is the biggest in this city.

II. Combine each pair of sentences, using "who", "whom" or "that" according to the example. 仿照例句用 who, whom 或 that 合并下列句子。

1. The man is not here. /You were talking to the man.
   The man who(m)/that you were talking to is not here.
2. The teacher was standing at the front. /We handed the papers to the teacher.
3. I'm looking for someone. /He has a mobile phone to sell.
4. The young man is a doctor. /We just saw the young man.
5. The person helped me. /The person was a stranger.
6. The man had run away with a lot of money. /The police wanted the man.
7. At last I met the man. /I had heard so much about the man.
8. The policemen are on traffic duty. /The policemen look very tired.

9. This is the girl. /The girl found your money.

_____

10. They looked for the men. /The men were selling tickets.

_____

Lesson 123 A trip to Australia

澳大利亚之行

I. Combine each pair of sentences according to the example. 仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. These are the boxes. /We keep the papers in them.
   These are the boxes we keep the papers in.
2. The chair broke. /He was sitting on it.
3. Show me the book. /You got the book from the library.
4. The books are on the top shelf. /You were looking for them.
5. The fruit is very fresh. /I bought the fruit in that greengrocer's.
6. The knife slipped and cut his hand. /He was using the knife.
7. The window was still open. /The thief had climbed through the window.
8. The furniture was very dusty. /She was cleaning it.
9. The dress was green. /She put on the dress.

10. The book was very interesting. /He read the book last week.

_____

II. Combine each pair of sentences according to the examples.
仿照例句合并下列句子。

1. I know the policeman. /The policeman is speaking to John.
   I know the policeman who is speaking to John.
2. The girl goes to my school. /I greeted the girl.
   The girl I greeted goes to my school.
3. The tourists are from Japan. /The tourists have already left.

   _____
4. That is the lady. /I saw her on television last night.

   _____
5. The man was very old. /I helped the man.

   _____
6. The man is sitting in that car. /The man is my boss.

   _____
7. The person knows my teacher. /I met the person in Beijing.

   _____
8. The man is coming towards us. /You are looking for the man.

   _____
9. The man came to thank you. /You helped the man.

   _____
10. The man is going into that building. /We want to see the man.

    _____

Lesson 124 (who)/(whom), (which) and (that)

关系代词

I. Rewrite the sentences by omitting the relative pronouns according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子，省去关系代词。

1. The boy who is on the blue bike is my son.
   The boy on the blue bike is my son.
2. The man who is opening the bank is Mr. Brown.
   _____
3. The car that is on the right belongs to Mike.
   _____
4. The hat that the nurse is wearing is part of her uniform.
   _____
5. The babies whom you can see are only a few hours old.
   _____
6. The bus that we are on will take us downtown.
   _____
7. What's the name of the town that you live in?
   _____
8. He gave her the purse which she had left in the taxi.
   _____
9. The people who were standing there saw the accident.
   _____

10. The hospital which is around the corner is the one that we are going to.

_____

11. Is this the coat which you took off?

_____

12. I'm afraid there is little that I can do for you.

_____

13. The music that is coming from that window is nice.

_____

II. Correct the sentences and rewrite them according to the example. 仿照例句改正并重写下列句子。

1. The building you are looking is the Foreign Language Department Building.

   The building you are looking at is the Foreign Language Department Building.

2. I want a watch who I can use as a stop-watch.

_____

3. This writing paper my father gave it to me is very good.

_____

4. She couldn't find her shopping bag which she had put all her books.

_____

5. The pen he was writing with it was very expensive.

_____

6. There were some people not liking the idea.

_____

7. This is my brother going to Australia.

_____

8. I don't know the full name of the person I'm writing.

_____

9. There's the boy losing his book.

_____

10. This is the kitten Jane finding in the garden.

_____

Lesson 125 Tea for two

两个人一起喝茶

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do you have to clean the blackboard today?
   Yes, I have to clean it today and I shall have to clean it tomorrow, too.
2. Do you have to see the doctor today?
   _____
3. Do I have to cook lunch today?
   _____
4. Does he have to serve in the shop today?
   _____
5. Do you have to see the dentist today?
   _____
6. Does he have to wear that tie today?
   _____
7. Does she have to help her mother today?
   _____
8. Do you have to water the garden today?
   _____

II. Answer the questions according to the examples. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. a. Do you have to take an examination today?
   No, I don't have to take one today, but I had to take one yesterday.

b. Does she have to type any letters today?

No, she doesn't have to type any today, but she had to type some yesterday.

c. Do I have to water the flowers today?

d. Do you have to clean your bike today?

e. Do we have to clean the windows today?

f. Does he have to buy some butter today?

2. a. Do you have to go to school today?

No, I don't, and I won't have to go to school tomorrow, either.

b. Do I have to go to bed early today?

c. Do you have to do your homework today?

d. Does she have to wash any clothes today?

e. Do I have to do the shopping today?

f. Do we have to hand in our papers today?

III. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Do I have to wear shoes and socks?

You must wear shoes but you don't need to wear socks.

2. Do I have to wash my hands and face?

_____

3. Do we have to close the door and the windows?

_____

4. Does he have to wear a shirt and a tie?

_____

5. Do we have to go to school today and tomorrow?

_____

6. Do we have to read the book and answer the questions?

_____

7. Do I have to clean my teeth and wash my hair?

_____

8. Do you have to cook vegetables and fish for supper?

_____

9. Does she have to look after the baby and the cat?

_____

10. Do I have to put on my coat and hat?

_____

Lesson 126 Have to and do not need to

不得不和不必要

I. Complete the sentences by adding "have to", "don't need to" or "didn't need to". 用 have to, don't need to 或 didn't need to 填空。

1. I _____ buy both books so I bought only one.
2. We _____ hurry. We are very late.
3. We _____ hurry. There is plenty of time.
4. He _____ do any homework last night because he had finished it at school.
5. You _____ take a taxi. There is a bus coming.
6. She _____ get up early yesterday because it was a holiday, so she stayed in bed till 10 o'clock.
7. You _____ stay behind to help me with my work. I can do it by myself.
8. I _____ take a taxi. I can't wait for a bus.
9. You _____ write home because you are going home tomorrow.
10. I _____ buy any new shoes because my mother bought two pairs for me yesterday.
11. He _____ do any work yesterday because his brother had done it all for him.
12. You _____ do all the work by yourself. I can help you if you want.

II. Make dialogues, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词编写对话。

1. clean the blackboard

I must clean the blackboard now because I'm on duty today.

No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.

Then I shall have to clean it tomorrow.

No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll clean it for you.

2. sweep the floor

3. clean the desks and chairs

4. clean the windows

5. collect the books

6. water the flowers

Lesson 127 A famous actress

著名的女演员

I. Rewrite the sentences, using "can't be/do" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **can't be/do** 改写下列句子。

1. I don't believe it's true.

   It can't be true.

2. I don't believe it's cold outside.

   _____

3. I don't believe that you are right.

   _____

4. I don't believe she is sixty years old.

   _____

5. I don't believe the book costs two hundred pounds.

   _____

6. I don't believe it's eleven thirty.

   _____

7. I don't believe he is so careless.

   _____

8. I don't believe she is our new teacher.

   _____

9. I don't believe he is fifty.

   _____

10. I don't believe he is ill.

    _____

11. I don't believe they're farmers.

_____

12. I don't believe it's so hot there.

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences, using "must be/do" according to the example. 仿照例句用 must be/do 改写下列句子。

1. I think he is ill. *He must be ill.*
2. I think he is an actor. _____
3. I think she's twenty years old. _____
4. I think he is a careful man. _____
5. I think there is some water in the kettle. _____
6. I think they have enough money for it. _____
7. I think the pen is worth only ten *yuan*. _____
8. I think you are very clever. _____
9. I think they're businessmen. _____
10. I think it's about six o'clock. _____
11. I think he is very intelligent. _____
12. I think you are very tired. _____

III. Rewrite the sentences, using "must", "can't" or "can" according to the examples. 仿照例句用 must, can't 或 can 改写下列句子。

1. I have to wash some clothes.
   I must wash some clothes.
2. It's impossible that he is in the library.
   He can't be in the library.
3. He swims well.
   He can swim well.

4. You speak French well.

_____

5. I think he is having a bath now.

_____

6. She has to clean the house every day.

_____

7. It's impossible that she is fifty!

_____

8. I'm sure they are students.

_____

9. I have to read this book.

_____

10. It's impossible that he is watching television.

_____

11. I'm sure they are on their way home.

_____

12. That man runs very fast.

_____

13. I don't believe that house is very expensive.

_____

14. I think it's July 23rd today.

_____

15. I don't think she is very rich.

_____

16. I'm sure they are having a lesson now.

_____

17. The girl writes very well.

_____

18. You have to correct all their mistakes.

_____

19. I think your son is a clever boy.

_____

20. It's impossible that she is at home.

_____

Lesson 128 He can't be . . .
He must be . . .

他不可能……
他肯定是……

I. Fill in the blanks with "can't" or "must". 用 can't 或 must 填空。

1. You are going to Paris? You _____ be serious! You _____ be joking!
2. He looks very young. He _____ be over thirty. It _____ be because he has two big boys.
3. The ambulance is in a hurry. Someone _____ be seriously ill.
4. It can't be Friday today. I came here on Monday and I've only been here for three days. You _____ be wrong.
5. I don't believe it. It _____ be true. You _____ be dreaming.
6. What did he say about her? He _____ mean it. He _____ be joking.
7. It _____ be ten o'clock, can it? I feel we've only been here for half an hour. Your watch _____ be fast.
8. I think the answer is yes. You _____ be right.
9. Did you say he is English? He _____ be from England. He looks like an Indian. He _____ be from Asia.

10. It's the 13th tomorrow, so it _____ be the 12th today.

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Where do you think he is from? Is he from Holland? (Russia)

   No, he can't be from Holland. He must be from Russia.

2. Who do you think that is? Is it Jack? (Mike)

   _____

3. What do you think his job is? Is he a lawyer? (artist)

   _____

4. Where do you think she lives? Does she live near the school? (a long way from the school)

   _____

5. Where do you think Ann is? Is she at home? (at the office)

   _____

6. What do you think they are doing now? Are they working? (playing)

   _____

7. What time do you think it is now? Is it two o'clock? (three o'clock)

   _____

8. Which umbrella do you think is hers? Is it the red one? (yellow one)

   _____

9. What do you think is the hottest month in that country? Is it December? (August)

_____

10. How old do you think he is? Is he fourteen? (eighteen)

_____

Lesson 129 Seventy miles an hour

时速 70 英里

I. Rewrite the sentences, using "must have been/done" or "can't have been/done" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **must have been/done** 或 **can't have been/done** 改写下列句子。

1. In my opinion, you didn't see me. I wasn't there.
   You can't have seen me. I wasn't there.
2. I'm sure you had a good time yesterday. You all looked excited.
   _____
3. The men worked all day without a rest. I am sure they were very tired.
   _____
4. I don't think you did all that by yourself. It was not easy.
   _____
5. That peach tasted unpleasant. I'm sure it was bad.
   _____
6. I'm sure he wasn't there because I didn't see him.
   _____
7. I'm sure you didn't pass the exam. You didn't study for it.
   _____
8. I'm sure that it didn't rain last night. The ground is not wet.
   _____

9. You didn't go anywhere after dinner in the restaurant. I'm sure you left your case there.

_____

10. I'm sure you ate my biscuits. Why didn't you tell me?

_____

II. Answer the questions, using "had better do" according to the example. You may make changes where necessary. 仿照例句用 had better do 回答下列问题，并做必要的改变。

1. Do I have to change my shirt?

   Yes, you'd better change your shirt.

2. Do I have to have a bath?

   _____

3. Does he have to have a haircut?

   _____

4. Do we have to get something to eat?

   _____

5. Do I have to do my homework?

   _____

6. Does she have to go and see a doctor?

   _____

7. Do I have to telephone the teacher?

   _____

8. Does he have to take his son to school?

   _____

9. Do I have to do some shopping?

   _____

10. Does she have to water the flowers?

    _____

III. Give advice, using "had better (not) do" according to the examples. 仿照例句用 had better (not) do 写出下列各句的对应句。

1. I feel sleepy. (get some sleep)
   You'd better get some sleep.
2. I've got a bad cold. (not go swimming)
   You'd better not go swimming.
3. He's got a headache. (take an aspirin)
   _____
4. I'm very tired. (not stay up late)
   _____
5. I'm not feeling well tonight. (not go out)
   _____
6. The bus is crowded. (take a taxi)
   _____
7. She feels hot. (open the windows)
   _____
8. It's raining today. (stay in)
   _____
9. The baby is sleeping. (not turn on the stereo)
   _____
10. She's got a temperature. (not eat too much)
    _____
11. I don't understand the text. (ask your teacher)
    _____
12. He has got a stomachache. (not drink anything)
    _____

Lesson 130 He can't have been . . .
He must have been . . .

他那时不可能……
他那时肯定是……

I. Rewrite the sentences, using "can't have been/done" according to the example. 仿照例句用 can't have been/done 改写下列句子。

1. I don't believe he did it.
   He can't have done it.
2. I don't believe you tried very hard.
3. I don't believe you were at the office on Sunday.
4. I don't believe he was ill yesterday.
5. I don't believe you saw me.
6. I don't believe there were many people there.
7. I don't believe it was so cold in your city last winter.
8. I don't believe you telephoned me.
9. I don't believe she made the dress.

10. I don't believe you failed the Maths test.

_____

11. I don't believe she was so lucky.

_____

12. I don't believe he sold his car.

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences, using "must have been/done" according to the example. 仿照例句用 must have been/done 改写下列句子。

1. I think it rained last night.

   It must have rained last night.

2. I think he passed all the exams.

   _____

3. I think she met him at the party.

   _____

4. I think the shop was full of people.

   _____

5. I think he made a lot of money.

   _____

6. I think they heard about it.

   _____

7. I think he went to Shanghai yesterday.

   _____

8. I think they were walking in the park.

   _____

9. I think that car was cheap.

   _____

10. I think he was sleeping.

_____

11. I think the day was May 5th.

_____

12. I think he was a policeman at the time.

_____

Lesson 131 Don't be so sure!

别那么肯定！

I. Fill in the blanks with "may be/do" or "may have been/done". 用 may be/do 或 may have been/done 填空。

1. She _____ (come) with us. She hasn't made up her mind.
2. I _____ (pass) the exam. I don't know. I haven't heard the results yet.
3. There _____ (be) good news soon. I'm not sure.
4. He thinks that there _____ (be) a change in the programme.
5. They were very late. They _____ (miss) the bus.
6. She didn't come to work yesterday. She _____ (be) ill.
7. He didn't finish it. He _____ (have) too little time to do it. I'm not sure.
8. We haven't made up our minds. We _____ (travel) to Hainan this winter.
9. He _____ (find) his lost key. I'm not sure.
10. She doesn't look Japanese. She _____ (be) Korean.

II. Answer the questions, using "may" according to the example. 仿照例句用 may 回答下列问题。

1. Will he get his licence?

He may get it or he may not. I'm not sure.

2. Will it rain tomorrow?

_____

3. Is she busy?

_____

4. Will there be a meeting next week?

_____

5. Will she go to university this year?

_____

6. Will it be fine tomorrow?

_____

7. Are they having their lunch now?

_____

8. Is he in the office?

_____

9. Are we going by train?

_____

10. Will there be a holiday on Friday?

_____

III. Answer the questions, using "may have ..." according to the example. 仿照例句用 may have ...回答下列问题。

1. Did the driver of the car see you?

He may have seen me. I'm not sure.

2. Did the man really see a famous actress?

_____

3. Was he reading in the library?

_____

4. Was she a policewoman three years ago?

_____

5. Did he borrow the money from his father?

_____

6. Did it rain this time last year?

_____

7. Was he ill?

_____

8. Did they find the lost case?

_____

9. Did Gary stay at home?

_____

10. Did he buy the car?

_____

Lesson 132 He may be . . .
He may have been . . .
I'm not sure.

他可能是……
他可能已经……
我不敢肯定。

I. Write sentences, using "may" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **may** 造句。

1. You'd better go to bed early. (feel better/in the morning)
   You may feel better in the morning.
2. He'd better not go out tonight. (his cold/get worse)
   _____
3. You'd better try on that coat. (it/fit)
   _____
4. You'd better take an aspirin. (it/help your headache)
   _____
5. You'd better telephone first. (she/not be at home)
   _____
6. You'd better put on more clothes. (it/get colder)
   _____
7. We'd better wait for them. (they/be on their way)
   _____
8. You'd better not worry him. (he/be busy)
   _____

9. You'd better ask his advice. (he/know the answer)

_____

10. We'd better not shout. (they/be having a lesson in the next room)

_____

II. Write sentences, using "may have ..." according to the example. 仿照例句用 may have ...造句。

1. We'd better hurry. (the film/already started)
   The film may have already started.
2. We'd better call the police. (a thief/broken in)

   _____
3. We'd better call the doctor. (he/caught flu)

   _____
4. You'd better stop. (that policeman/seen you)

   _____
5. I'd better go home now. (my mother/prepared supper)

   _____
6. You'd better help that man. (he/lost his way)

   _____
7. We'd better telephone him. (he/lost our number)

   _____
8. You'd better look for her in her classroom. (she/gone there)

   _____
9. We'd better ring the police. (they/had an accident)

   _____
10. Perhaps he didn't hear the telephone. (he/been in the garden)

    _____

Lesson 133 Sensational news!

爆炸性新闻！

I. Change the direct speech into indirect speech according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "I want some coffee."
   He said that *he wanted some coffee*.
2. "She's too young to go to school."
   He said that _____
3. "I'm not feeling well."
   She said that _____
4. "We have finished the work."
   They said that _____
5. "They saw you at the meeting."
   He said that _____
6. "I'm coming to China soon."
   She said that _____
7. "The weather is going to change."
   I said that _____
8. "I'm working hard."
   She said that _____
9. "We did it."
   They said that _____
10. "She is waiting for a bus."
    He said that _____

II. Change the direct speech into indirect speech. 将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "Mr. Brown is the winner," he said to me.
   He told me that _____
2. "I'm sure that you are wrong," he said to her.
   He told her that _____
3. "I ran faster than Bob," he said to them.
   He told them that _____
4. "We have done it before," they said to us.
   They told us that _____
5. "You swam very well," she said to him.
   She told him that _____
6. "I've got a bad headache and a temperature," she said to the doctor.
   She told the doctor that _____
7. "We are sorry to hear she has not been well," he said to her mother.
   He told her mother that _____
8. "I don't want anything else," I said to them.
   I told them that _____
9. "I waited for an hour and then I went home," he said to her.
   He told her that _____
10. "I have already read half of the book you gave me," she said to him.
    She told him that _____

III. Change the indirect speech into direct speech according to the examples. 仿照例句将下列间接引语改为直接引语。

1. He said that he liked it.
   He said, "I like it."
2. She said that she was listening to the radio.

3. She said that he had told her about it.

4. He said that she had been waiting for weeks.

5. He said that he had been thinking about it.

6. She said that he was strong enough to lift it.

7. He told his father that he wanted some money.
   He told his father, "I want some money."
8. Tom told me that he had passed the test.

9. She told him that she had never seen him before.

10. She told them that she was helping her mother.

11. He told me that he was going to go to England soon.

12. He told me that they had already retired.

Lesson 134 He said (that) he ...
He told me (that) he ...

他曾说他……
他曾告诉我说他……

I. Answer the questions by changing the direct speech into indirect speech according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题，将直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "I have read a lot, and I am still reading."
   What did he tell you?
   He told me he had read a lot and he was still reading.

2. "She has just won a prize. She is very lucky."
   What did he tell you?
   _____

3. "We are going to move into a new flat."
   What did she tell you?
   _____

4. "My son came back to see me from New York."
   What did she tell you?
   _____

5. "I am drinking coffee with my friends."
   What did he tell you?
   _____

6. "The red book is not mine."
   What did she tell you?
   _____

7. "My friend has just bought a Mercedes."
What did he tell you?

_____

8. "I have just read about the accident in the newspaper."
What did he tell you?

_____

II. Answer the questions by changing the direct speech into indirect speech according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题，将直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "I don't think you like me."
What did he say to her?
He said he didn't think she liked him .

2. "I am going to buy you an ice cream."
What did he say to the children?

_____

3. "I want to buy some flowers for your mother."
What did she say to him?

_____

4. "I know my umbrella is the same colour as yours."
What did she say to him?

_____

5. "I am answering a telephone call from a friend."
What did he say to her?

_____

6. "I want you to buy some stamps for me."
What did he say to his daughter?

_____

7. "My brother is working for your husband."
   What did he say to her?

   _____

8. "You look ill. I am sure there is something wrong with you."
   What did she say to her father?

   _____

Lesson 135 The latest report

最新消息

I. Change the direct speech into indirect speech according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "I shall be glad to meet you."
   He said *he would be glad to meet me*.
2. "I will do it myself."
   He said _____
3. "You can watch television."
   His mother said _____
4. "I think I can help you."
   She said _____
5. "I may go with you."
   He said _____
6. "I can't understand long English sentences."
   He said _____
7. "He may be getting married soon."
   She said _____
8. "I shall meet your teacher."
   My mother said _____
9. "You will have to stay at home."
   He said _____
10. "We will often visit you."
    They said _____

II. Change the direct speech into indirect speech according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "We shall leave after lunch."
   He told me *they would leave after lunch*.
2. "I shall never sell my house."
   He told me _____
3. "You can't go out by yourself at night."
   Her mother told her _____
4. "You can buy something with the money."
   His mother told him _____
5. "I need some sugar."
   She told me _____
6. "My friend may visit me."
   My sister told me _____
7. "There may be a lot of tourists in my city this year."
   He told me _____
8. "You will have to start school soon."
   His father told him _____
9. "I'm sure I shall have a good time in England."
   She told me _____
10. "I can't find my school report anywhere."
    He told me _____

III. Change the indirect speech into direct speech according to the examples. 仿照例句将下列间接引语改为直接引语。

1. She said she couldn't remember my telephone number.
   She said, "I can't remember your telephone number."
2. He said he might know my father.
   _____

3. My teacher said I would have to be more careful the next time.

_____

4. He said the telephone call might be for me.

_____

5. She said she would sweep the floor and dust the furniture.

_____

6. He said it might snow soon.

_____

7. He told me he would tell me about it soon.

He told me, "I shall tell you about it soon."

8. He told me he couldn't finish the job.

_____

9. She told me she would go and have a look.

_____

10. He told me he was sorry he couldn't write to me.

_____

11. Kate told me the train would leave at four fifty.

_____

12. He told me he might retire next year.

_____

Lesson 136 He said (that) he ...
He told me (that) he ...

他(曾)说他……
他(曾)告诉我说他……

I. Change the direct speech into indirect speech. 将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "You may get a better mark than me in the Maths test," he said to her.

_____

2. "I will have dinner with you one day soon," he told her.

_____

3. "The watch you like may be very expensive," she said to him.

_____

4. "I will write to you every day," she told him.

_____

5. "I won't play football with you because I can't play the game," he said to them.

_____

6. "I'm sorry I can't make up my mind," he said to her.

_____

7. "I shall wait for you until ten o'clock," he told her.

_____

8. "I can get tickets for you and your parents," she said to him.

_____

II. Answer the questions by changing the direct speech into indirect speech. 回答下列问题，将直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "It may be the most sensational news of the year."
   What did he say?

   _____

2. "I shall have to do all the housework today."
   What did the woman say?

   _____

3. "I can't make a dress but I can make a cake."
   What did he tell you?

   _____

4. "I think he will be here on time."
   What did she say?

   _____

5. "I'm sure we can win the match."
   What did he say?

   _____

6. "I'm afraid she may be angry."
   What did he say?

   _____

7. "You can buy the trousers for half the price."
   What did the shop assistant tell you?

   _____

8. "I can teach you English."
   What did she tell you?

   _____

Lesson 137 A pleasant dream

美好的梦

I. Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verb given. 用所给动词的正确时态填空。

1. If you _____ (see) him, please give him this letter.
2. Everything _____ (be) all right if you win some money.
3. What _____ you _____ (say) if you _____ (see) him?
4. If you _____ (not arrive) early, you _____ (not get) a seat.
5. If he _____ (stay) with me, I will not be afraid.
6. I _____ (help) you if I can.
7. If you _____ (not hurry), you _____ (be) late.
8. If he _____ (fall) off that wall, he _____ (hurt) himself.
9. We _____ (do) it if we can.
10. If she _____ (feel) ill tomorrow, she _____ (go) and see a doctor.
11. If you _____ (work) hard, you _____ (get) good marks.
12. If she _____ (pass) the examination, she _____ (leave) school.

II. Answer the questions, using the cues given according to the example. 仿照例句用所给的词回答下列问题。

1. What will you do if you take a long holiday next summer? (go to New York)

   If I take a long holiday next summer, I'll go to New York.

2. How will you go if you go to New York? (by air)

   _____

3. Which airport will you arrive at if you fly to New York? (Kennedy Airport)

   _____

4. Where will you go if you arrive at Kennedy Airport? (Manhattan)

   _____

5. How will you go if you go to Manhattan? (go by bus)

   _____

6. What will you see if you go to Manhattan? (the Empire State Building)

   _____

7. What will you do if you visit the Empire State Building? (go to the top)

   _____

8. What will you do if you go to the top? (take some photographs of New York)

   _____

III. Combine each pair of sentences, using "if" according to the example. 仿照例句用 if 合并下列句子。

1. It's possible that you won't feel better tomorrow. /You must go to the doctor's.

   If you don't feel better tomorrow, you must go to the doctor's.

2. It's possible that it'll be fine tomorrow. /I'm going to have a swim.

   _____

3. It's possible that it won't rain tomorrow. /I'll go to the beach.

   _____

4. It's possible that you'll ask him. /I'm sure he'll help you.

   _____

5. It's possible that you'll finish the test before me. /Please wait for me.

   _____

6. It's possible that you'll see him. /Please give him my best wishes.

   _____

7. It's possible that she won't speak more loudly. /No one will hear her.

   _____

8. It's possible that I will know the answer. /I'll tell you.

   _____

9. It's possible that he'll pass the exam. /He'll go to university.

   _____

10. It's possible that I'll have enough money. /I'll buy a car.

_____

Lesson 138 If . . .

如果……

I. Combine each pair of sentences, using "if" according to the example. 仿照例句用 **if** 合并下列句子。

1. You're six years old. /You can go to school.
   If you're six years old, you can go to school.
2. You have enough money. /You can buy that bike.

   _____
3. You speak German well. /You can work in Germany.

   _____
4. You have a good voice. /You can be a singer.

   _____
5. You win the prize. /You will get ten thousand *yuan*.

   _____
6. You finish your homework. /You can go out to play.

   _____
7. You are not feeling well. /You can have a rest.

   _____
8. You get good marks in the exams. /You can go to a good university.

   _____

II. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. she/eat too many bananas/she/feel sick
   If she eats too many bananas, she will feel sick.

2. she/not sweep the floor/her mother/be angry

_____

3. you/come back late/you/must tell me

_____

4. you/listen to me carefully/you/understand

_____

5. I/have time/I/learn another language

_____

6. you/speak English every day/you/speak English better

_____

7. you/drive too fast/a policeman/stop you

_____

8. you/are more careful/you/make fewer mistakes

_____

9. he/finish his homework early/he/watch television

_____

10. you/pay for these books/I/have them

_____

Lesson 139 Is that you, John?

是你吗，约翰？

I. Change the following into indirect questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "What are you watching?"
   He wants to know what I am watching.
2. "When will the tourists arrive?"
   _____
3. "Why must you leave?"
   _____
4. "Who are they?"
   _____
5. "How will you travel?"
   _____
6. "Where can I find the book?"
   _____
7. "Where are your dresses?"
   _____
8. "When will the next train be here?"
   _____
9. "Why are you looking so tired?"
   _____
10. "Who is that man behind Ann?"
    _____
11. "How is your mother?"
    _____

12. "What is she studying?"

_____

13. "Why is the boy crying?"

_____

14. "Where will you go next weekend?"

_____

15. "Who is your new teacher?"

_____

II. Change the following into indirect questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "What do you want to drink?"

He wants to know what I want to drink.

2. "Where do you live?"

_____

3. "When does your school day start?"

_____

4. "Why does she want the book?"

_____

5. "How did they go there?"

_____

6. "Who does Tim look like?"

_____

7. "When did you have your party?"

_____

8. "Where do you keep the fruit?"

_____

9. "Why does she want to see you?"

_____

10. "When did you do the job?"

_____

11. "What did you do yesterday?"

_____

12. "How do you keep your house clean and tidy?"

_____

13. "How does she know the answer?"

_____

14. "Why did you buy that book?"

_____

15. "Why do you want to be a doctor?"

_____

III. Change the following into indirect questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "Did you do your work?"

He wants to know if I did my work.

2. "Can you all hear me?"

_____

3. "Can I open the windows?"

_____

4. "Are you coming to my party?"

_____

5. "Will you go and see the doctor?"

_____

6. "Do you want to go swimming?"

_____

7. "Will anyone help you?"

_____

8. "Have you made up your mind?"

_____

9. "Did you enjoy the film?"

_____

10. "Can you tell me the way to the station?"

_____

11. "Are there any mistakes in my paper?"

_____

12. "May I ask you a question?"

_____

13. "Will you write to me soon?"

_____

14. "Do you work for an engineering company?"

_____

15. "Have you ever been to Paris?"

_____

Lesson 140 He wants to know if/why/what/when

他想知道是否/为什么/什么/什么时候

I. Change the following into indirect questions according to the example. 仿照例句将下列直接引语改为间接引语。

1. "What are you doing?"
   Tell me what you're doing.
2. "Where is your brother?"
3. "What's she eating?"
4. "Where are you going?"
5. "When are we going to have dinner?"
6. "Are you ready?"
7. "Will there be a meeting tomorrow?"
8. "Is that big house yours?"
9. "When did they play football?"

10. "What did you buy in that shop?"

_____

11. "Do you want a drink?"

_____

12. "What is the answer?"

_____

13. "Can he swim?"

_____

14. "Are you coming with us?"

_____

15. "How did you lose your watch?"

_____

16. "What are you talking about?"

_____

17. "Does the lesson start at eight?"

_____

18. "Must I do it?"

_____

II. Make dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句编写对话。

1. "What does he want?"

Do you know what he wants?

No, I don't know what he wants.

2. "Has the bus arrived?"

_____

_____

3. "Does he want a cup of coffee?"

4. "Is he all right?"

5. "Is Mount Qomolangma the highest mountain in the world?"

6. "Why didn't she tell me?"

7. "When can they start work?"

8. "Does he like beef?"

9. "Is she going to England or France?"

10. "How did he hurt himself?"

Lesson 141 Sally's first train ride

萨莉第一次乘火车旅行

I. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Someone sweeps the classroom every day.
   The classroom is swept every day.
2. Someone cleans the blackboard after every lesson.
   _____
3. Someone turns on the lights in the evening.
   _____
4. Someone washes the dishes every day.
   _____
5. Some people paint the school regularly.
   _____
6. Someone cuts the grass very often.
   _____
7. Someone cooks supper at six o'clock.
   _____
8. People sell meat at the market every day.
   _____
9. People in Canada grow a lot of wheat.
   _____
10. People in Brazil grow a lot of coffee.
    _____

11. People in some parts of Canada speak French.

_____

12. People clean our office every day.

_____

II. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. Someone washed the car last week.
   The car was washed last week.
2. Someone cleaned the desks and chairs before the lesson.

   _____
3. Someone invited him to a party.

   _____
4. Someone met the children after school.

   _____
5. Someone took the children to school by car.

   _____
6. Someone repaired his car yesterday.

   _____
7. Someone turned off the lights last night.

   _____
8. Someone washed the dishes yesterday.

   _____
9. Someone made the beds this morning.

   _____
10. Tom was badly hurt in the crash. Someone took him to hospital.

    _____

III. Rewrite the sentences according to the example. 仿照例句改写下列句子。

1. People speak English all over the world.
   English is spoken all over the world.
2. They build houses very quickly here.
   _____
3. Someone broke that window last month.
   _____
4. They painted the door red.
   _____
5. Someone saw him in the park.
   _____
6. Someone caught the thief in the shop.
   _____
7. Someone dusts the furniture every day.
   _____
8. Someone found the money and gave it to the policeman.
   _____
9. Someone delivers letters to every house every morning.
   _____
10. Someone put the vase on the top shelf.
    _____

Lesson 142 Someone invited Sally to a party.
Sally was invited to a party.

有人邀请萨莉出席一个聚会。
萨莉应邀出席一个聚会。

I. Fill in the blanks with the correct passive form of the verb given according to the examples. 仿照例句用所给动词的被动语态形式填空。

1. Our house *is painted* (paint) regularly every June.
2. My father's car *was repaired* (repair) last week.
3. English _____ (speak) all over the world now.
4. The flowers in our small garden _____ (water) every day.
5. This book _____ (write) about ten years ago.
6. The doors and windows _____ (shut) last night and then we went to bed.
7. Last Saturday I _____ (meet) at the station.
8. We _____ (invite) to a party last Saturday evening.
9. We couldn't use the telephone the day before yesterday, but the telephone line _____ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
10. Our house is very old. It _____ (build) a hundred years ago.
11. A lot of money _____ (win) every week on the football pools.

12. Last week we _____ (introduce) to a famous actress.
13. "You are the thief," said the policeman. "You _____ (see) in the shop at midnight last Saturday."
14. I can't understand this magazine. It _____ (write) in German!
15. Their house is very clean. The furniture _____ (dust) every day and the floors _____ (wash) every day, too.

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Doesn't anyone ever open these windows? (this morning)
   Of course they do! They were opened this morning.
2. Doesn't anyone ever air this room? (yesterday)
   _____
3. Doesn't anyone ever invite her to a party? (last weekend)
   _____
4. Doesn't anyone ever water those flowers? (yesterday evening)
   _____
5. Doesn't anyone ever clean this carpet? (a week ago)
   _____
6. Doesn't anyone ever empty these baskets? (this morning)
   _____
7. Doesn't anyone ever wash the kitchen floor? (yesterday)
   _____
8. Doesn't anyone ever ask her out to dinner? (last Saturday evening)
   _____

Lesson 143 A walk through the woods

林中散步

I. Give correct replies according to the example. 仿照例句写出下列各句的对应句。

1. Sweep the floor, please.
   I don't need to sweep the floor. It has already been swept.
2. Clean the cooker, please.
   _____
3. Clean the carpet, please.
   _____
4. Wash the dishes, please.
   _____
5. Dust the table, please.
   _____
6. Water the flowers, please.
   _____
7. Make some coffee, please.
   _____
8. Type the letters, please.
   _____
9. Put the newspapers on the shelf, please.
   _____
10. Open the windows, please.
    _____

II. Make sentences according to the example. 仿照例句造句。

1. new shop/open/tomorrow

   The new shop will be opened tomorrow.

2. the job/do/soon

3. your shoes/repair/tomorrow

4. the highest building in the city/build/next year

5. children/send to school/next week

6. wall/paint/green/next week

7. refrigerator/repair/next Monday

8. two new films/show/in the city/next month

9. pictures/put up on the wall/soon

10. party/hold/in two days' time

III. Write dialogues according to the example. 仿照例句编写对话。

1. repair your car/soon

   Has anyone repaired your car yet?

   No, it hasn't been repaired yet, but it will be repaired soon.

2. catch the thief/this week

_____

_____

3. empty the litter bins/tomorrow

_____

_____

4. repair the telephone line/next week

_____

_____

5. water the garden/this evening

_____

_____

6. tell them the good news/this evening

_____

_____

Lesson 144 He hasn't been served yet. He will be served soon.

还没有人来侍候他。
很快会有人来侍候他的。

I. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Has the new hospital been built yet? (next year)
   No, not yet, but it will be built next year.
2. Have you been served yet? (soon)
   _____
3. Has your homework been checked yet? (soon)
   _____
4. Have the books been returned yet? (tomorrow)
   _____
5. Have the stamps been put on the envelopes yet? (soon)
   _____
6. Have you been introduced to the new students yet? (soon)
   _____
7. Has she been invited to the dance yet? (soon)
   _____
8. Has my bike been repaired yet? (this afternoon)
   _____
9. Have the letters been posted yet? (in five minutes' time)
   _____

10. Has the table been cleaned yet? (in a minute)

_____

II. Answer the questions according to the example. 仿照例句回答下列问题。

1. Was the old part of the city changed a long time ago?
   No, it has only just been changed.
2. Were many old houses repaired a long time ago?

   _____
3. Were all the businesses started a long time ago?

   _____
4. Was the cinema built a long time ago?

   _____
5. Were all the schools set up a long time ago?

   _____
6. Was the college opened a long time ago?

   _____
7. Was the big supermarket built a long time ago?

   _____
8. Were the parks opened a long time ago?

   _____
9. Were litter baskets put here a long time ago?

   _____
10. Was the town hall built a long time ago?

    _____

Key to the exercises

练习答案

Lesson 1

I. 2. My name is Ann Scott. 3. My name is Kathy Baker.
4. My name is Tom Smith. 5. My name is Sam Scott.
6. My name is Fred Johnson.

II. 2. pencil 3. book 4. coat 5. shirt
6. picture 7. dress 8. house 9. chair
10. map 11. watch 12. class

III. 2. Is this your chair? 3. Is this your skirt?
4. Is this your car? 5. Is this your handbag?
6. Is this your house? 7. Is this your pencil?
8. Is this your watch? 9. Is this your shirt?
10. Is this your coat? 11. Is this your pen?
12. Is this your dress?

Lesson 2

I. 2. Is this your book? 3. Is this your shirt?
4. Is this your house? 5. Is this your pen?
6. Is this your handbag? 7. Is this your picture?
8. Is this your watch? 9. Is this your pencil?
10. Is this your coat?

II. 2. Is this your house? 3. Is this your classroom?
Yes, it is. Yes, it is.

4. Is this your skirt?
Yes, it is.

5. Is this your dress?
Yes, it is.

6. Is this your chair?
Yes, it is.

7. Is this your handbag?
Yes, it is.

8. Is this your coat?
Yes, it is.

9. Is this your bag?
Yes, it is.

10. Is this your watch?
Yes, it is.

11. Is this your shirt?
Yes, it is.

12. Is this your pen?
Yes, it is.

13. Is this your book?
Yes, it is.

14. Is this your pencil?
Yes, it is.

Lesson 3

I. 2. It's my book.
3. Here's my watch.
4. It isn't my pen.
5. Here's your ticket.
6. This isn't my suit.
7. It's your umbrella.
8. This isn't my teacher.
9. It's my house.
10. It isn't my shirt.

II. 2. This is not my umbrella. /This isn't my umbrella.
3. It is not your ticket. /It isn't your ticket.
4. This is not your suit. /This isn't your suit.
5. It is not my handbag. /It isn't my handbag.
6. It is not your car. /It isn't your car.
7. This is not my son. /This isn't my son.
8. This is not my daughter. /This isn't my daughter.
9. It is not my school. /It isn't my school.
10. It is not your dress. /It isn't your dress.

III. 3. Yes, it is. It's your shirt.

4. Yes, it is. It's my house.
5. Yes, it is. It's my suit.
6. Yes, it is. It's your watch.
7. Yes, it is. It's my pen.
8. Yes, it is. It's your dress.
9. Yes, it is. It's my class.
10. Yes, it is. It's your chair.
11. Yes, it is. It's my pencil.
12. Yes, it is. It's your book.

IV. 3. No, it isn't. It isn't my ticket. It's your ticket.
4. No, it isn't. It isn't your suit. It's my suit.
5. No, it isn't. It isn't your pencil. It's my pencil.
6. No, it isn't. It isn't your book. It's my book.
7. No, it isn't. It isn't my handbag. It's your handbag.
8. No, it isn't. It isn't my coat. It's your coat.
9. No, it isn't. It isn't my watch. It's your watch.
10. No, it isn't. It isn't your pen. It's my pen.
11. No, it isn't. It isn't your dress. It's my dress.
12. No, it isn't. It isn't my house. It's your house.

Lesson 4

I. 2. it is/it isn't 3. it isn't/it is 4. it is/it isn't
5. it is/it isn't 6. it isn't/it is 7. it is/it isn't
8. it is/it isn't 9. it isn't/it is 10. it is/it isn't

II. 3. It isn't your suit. It's my suit.
4. It isn't my watch. It's your watch.
5. It isn't your ticket. It's my ticket.
6. It isn't your handbag. It's my handbag.
7. It isn't my coat. It's your coat.

8. It isn't your book. It's my book.

9. It isn't my pen. It's your pen.

10. It isn't my pencil. It's your pencil.

Lesson 5

I. 1. a 2. a 3. an 4. a 5. a 6. a
7. a 8. an 9. a 10. an 11. a 12. a
13. an 14. a 15. a

II. 2. Yes, she is. /No, she isn't. She is English.

3. Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. He is German.

4. Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. He is Japanese.

5. Yes, she is. /No, she isn't. She is Italian.

6. Yes, she is. /No, she isn't. She is Chinese.

7. Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. He is French.

8. Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. He is Korean.

9. Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. He is English.

10. Yes, she is. /No, she isn't. She is American.

III. 4. What make is your car?

5. What nationality is William?

6. What nationality is Zhang Wei?

7. What's her name?

8. What nationality is Naoko?

9. What make is your car?

10. What nationality is Ann?

11. What nationality is Hans?

12. What's her name?

13. What nationality is Ruth?

14. What make is your car?

15. What's his name?

16. What make is your car?

Lesson 6

I. 2. He/She is an English teacher.
3. It is a Swedish car.
4. It is a German watch.
5. He/She is a Korean student.
6. It is a nice house.
7. It is a Japanese car.
8. He/She is a good teacher.
9. He/She is a new student.
10. It is an Italian car.

II. 1. b. He's a German student.
c. It's an Italian car.
d. He's a Korean teacher.
e. It's an English car.
f. She's a new student.
g. It's a French car.
h. She's a Japanese student.
2. b. He is French.
c. It is Japanese.
d. It is Italian.
e. She is Japanese.
f. She is Swedish.
g. He is Chinese.
h. It is Korean.

Lesson 7

I. 1. am, is 2. Are, am 3. Is, is

4. Is, is, is　　5. am, is　　6. are, is

7. Are, am, am　　8. is, am　　9. is, is

10. Is, is, is

II. 1. b. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a boy.

c. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a/an ...

d. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a woman.

e. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a man.

f. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a/an ...

g. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a/an ...

h. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. I'm a/an ...

2. b. No, I'm not. I'm a teacher.

c. No, I'm not. I'm Korean.

d. No, I'm not. I'm a milkman.

e. No, I'm not. I'm a taxi driver.

f. No, I'm not. I'm a policeman.

g. No, I'm not. I'm an air hostess.

h. No, I'm not. I'm a nurse.

III. 5. No, I'm not. I'm a mechanic.

6. I'm an air hostess.

7. He's Swedish.

8. He isn't a nurse. He's a doctor.

9. I'm a policeman.

10. She isn't Korean. She's Japanese.

11. No, I'm not. I'm a hairdresser.

12. I'm Chinese.

13. No, it isn't. It's a German car.

14. No, he isn't. He's an Italian student.

15. Yes, I am.

16. No, she isn't. She's a housewife.

Lesson 8

I. 1. an, an, a　　2. a, an　　3. a　　4. a, a, an
5. an, an　　6. a, a, a　　7. a　　8. an, a
9. a, an　　10. a

II. 2. What's your job?
I'm an engineer.
3. What's her job?
She's a nurse.
4. What's his job?
He's a teacher.
5. What's his job?
He's a mechanic.
6. What's your job?
I'm a postman.
7. What's your job?
I'm a hairdresser.
8. What's his job?
He's a taxi driver.
9. What's her job?
She's a keyboard operator.
10. What's her job?
She's an air hostess.
11. What's your job?
I'm a policewoman.
12. What's her job?
She's a housewife.

III. 2. I'm not a mechanic. I'm a taxi driver.
3. She isn't a nurse. She's a doctor.
4. He isn't a postman. He's a milkman.
5. I'm not a French teacher. I'm an English teacher.
6. She isn't a nurse. She's an air hostess.
7. He/She isn't Swedish. He's/She's German.
8. I'm not a nurse. I'm a keyboard operator.
9. I'm not a policeman. I'm a hairdresser.
10. I'm not a teacher. I'm a student.

Lesson 9

I. 1. I'm　　2. It's　　3. She's　　4. He's
5. I'm　　6. It's　　7. She's　　8. He's

9. I'm　　10. It's, It's　　11. He's　　12. She's

13. It's　　14. He's　　15. It's　　16. He's

II. 2. How is/How's Emma?

3. How is/How's Tony?

4. How is/How's Tom?

5. How is/How's your mother?

6. How is/How's David?

7. How is/How's your sister?

8. How are you?

9. How is/How's Helen?

10. How is/How's your father?

11. How is/How's John?

12. How is/How's your son?

III. 1—e　2—j　3—d　4—c　5—h

6—i　7—a　8—f　9—b　10—g

Lesson 10

I. 2. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

3. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

4. No, he isn't. /Yes, he is.

5. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

6. No, I'm not. /Yes, I am.

7. No, she isn't. /Yes, she is.

8. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

9. No, he isn't. /Yes, he is.

10. No, I'm not. /Yes, I am.

11. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

12. No, it isn't. /Yes, it is.

II. 2. She isn't old. She's young.

3. I'm not hot. I'm cold.
4. He/She isn't short. He's/She's tall.
5. It isn't new. It's old.
6. It isn't French. It's Swedish.
7. He isn't thin. He's fat.
8. He isn't bad at school. He's good.
9. It isn't thin. It's thick.
10. It isn't big. It's small.

Lesson 11

I. 3. No, it isn't. It isn't his umbrella. It's her umbrella.
4. No, it isn't. It isn't my house. It's my father's house.
5. Yes, it is. It's her blouse.
6. No, it isn't. It isn't Tony's car. It's her car.
7. No, it isn't. It isn't your pen. It's my pen.
8. Yes, it is. It's Helen's handbag.
9. No, it isn't. It isn't Sophie's dress. It's Emma's dress.
10. No, it isn't. It isn't Robert's coat. It's Robert's brother's coat.
11. No, he isn't. He isn't my father. He's Helen's father.
12. Yes, it is. It's his suit.

II. 2. This car is my father's.
3. This tie is Tim's.
4. This blouse is Xiao Fang's.
5. This watch is my mother's.
6. This ticket is Helen's.
7. This room is Dave's sister's.
8. This coat is that policeman's.
9. This office is my teacher's.

10. This suit is Steven's.

III. 1. Jean's 2. Jean's 4. sister's 5. Helen's
6. son's 7. man's 8. Emma's 10. sister's
11. Steven's 12. boy's 13. Robert's 14. Helen's

Lesson 12

I. 2. Whose is this pencil? 3. Whose is that tie?
4. Whose is this coat? 5. Whose is that umbrella?
6. Whose is that blouse? 7. Whose is this car?
8. Whose is this watch? 9. Whose is that handbag?
10. Whose is this dress?

II. 2. No, it isn't Tony's. It's my brother's.
3. No, it isn't Robert's. It's Emma's.
4. No, it isn't my father's. It's that mechanic's.
5. No, it isn't Ruth's. It's Diana's.
6. No, it isn't my sister's. It's Helen's.
7. No, it isn't my sister's. It's my mother's.
8. No, it isn't William's. It's Maria's.
9. No, it isn't Sophie's. It's my daughter's.
10. No, it isn't Paul's. It's my brother's.

Lesson 13

I. 1. Whose 2. What 3. What 4. How
5. What 6. What 7. How 8. What
9. How 10. Whose 11. Whose 12. What
13. What 14. Whose 15. What 16. Whose
17. How 18. What 19. Whose 20. What

II. 3. This is your chair. It's clean.
4. That is your son's pencil. It's yellow.

5. This is her hat. It's grey.
6. That is her dress. It's smart.
7. This is my book. It's new.
8. That is Emma's car. It's red.
9. This is his tie. It's blue.
10. That is your case. It's brown.
11. This is my skirt. It's long.
12. That is his suit. It's black.

Lesson 14

I. 2. What colour's Paul's tie?
3. What colour's your brother's car?
4. What colour's that old man's hair?
5. What colour's Sophie's hat?
6. What colour's your son's dog?
7. What colour's your pencil?
8. What colour's her handbag?
9. What colour's his case?
10. What colour's Stella's coat?
11. What colour's your shirt?
12. What colour's Anna's skirt?

II. 2. It's brown. /It's the same colour. It's brown, too.
3. It's black. /It's the same colour. It's black, too.
4. It's grey and black. /It's the same colour. It's grey and black, too.
5. It's green. /It's the same colour. It's green, too.
6. It's brown and white. /It's the same colour. It's brown and white, too.
7. It's orange. /It's the same colour. It's orange, too.

8. It's yellow. /It's the same colour. It's yellow, too.

Lesson 15

I. 1. girls 2. friends 3. cases 4. passports
5. engineers 6. tickets 7. students 8. tourists
9. pencils 10. ties

II. 3. No, they aren't. They are white.
4. No, they aren't. They are Swedish.
5. No, they aren't. They are dirty.
6. Yes, they are.
7. No, they aren't. They are Danish.
8. No, they aren't. They are red.
9. Yes, they are.
10. No, they aren't. They are green.

III. 1. Is 2. are 3. is 4. is, is
5. Are 6. are, are 7. Are 8. are, are
9. is, are 10. Are, are 11. are 12. are, are

Lesson 16

I. 1. b. No, they aren't. They're German.
c. No, we aren't. We're Italian.
d. No, they aren't. They're Korean.
e. No, we aren't. We're German.
f. No, they aren't. They're white.
g. No, they aren't. They're Japanese.
h. No, they aren't. They're green.
i. No, they aren't. They're old.
j. No, they aren't. They're small.
2. b. They aren't yellow. They're orange.
c. We aren't Dutch. We're Danish.

d. We aren't English. We're French.

e. They aren't dirty. They're clean.

f. They aren't grey. They're white.

g. They aren't black. They're brown.

h. They aren't small. They're big.

i. They aren't young. They're old.

j. We aren't cold. We're hot.

II. 2. They're umbrellas.

3. Are they hairdressers?

4. Here they are.

5. These are my sons.

6. Are your brothers tall?

7. Here are your tickets.

8. Are they keyboard operators?

9. My friends are Norwegian.

10. Are these your passports?

11. What colour are your ties?

12. Are these your blouses?

13. His shirts are white.

14. Whose are these books?

15. How are your daughters?

16. These pens are Paul's.

17. Are you Customs officers?

18. We are nurses.

19. What make are these cars?

20. What colour are your coats?

Lesson 17

I. 1. watches 2. men 3. policemen

4. air hostesses　5. assistants　6. boxes
7. housewives　8. policewomen　9. postmen
10. dresses　11. women　12. classes

II. 2. They're milkmen.　3. They're engineers.
4. They're housewives.　5. They're nurses.
6. We're policewomen.　7. They're office assistants.
8. They're sales reps.　9. They're air hostesses.
10. We're postmen.

III. 2. Those policemen are tall.
3. Those housewives are fat.
4. Those teachers are very old.
5. Those employees are young.
6. Those air hostesses are very thin.
7. Those dresses are very smart.
8. Those mechanics are busy.
9. Those postmen are lazy.
10. Those hats are lovely.
11. The Customs officers are strong.
12. The dogs are black.
13. The nurses are nice.
14. The bags are brown.

Lesson 18

I. 1. your　2. their　3. Your　4. her　5. our
6. his　7. their　8. your　9. my　10. my, our

II. 3. Who is that girl?/What's her job?
4. Who are these two men?/What are their jobs?
5. Who are those people?/What are their jobs?
6. Who are this man and woman?/What are their jobs?

7. Who are they?/What are their jobs?
8. Who are these women?/What are their jobs?
9. Who is this man?/What's his job?
10. Who are they?/What are their jobs?

Lesson 19

I. 3. Are you tired?
Yes, we are.

4. Are they Norwegian?
No, they aren't Norwegian.

5. Are you busy?
No, we aren't busy.

6. Are you Dutch?
Yes, we are.

7. Are the boys tall?
Yes, they are.

8. Are these trousers long?
Yes, they are.

9. Are the teachers young?
No, they aren't young.

10. Are the shops big?
No, they aren't big.

11. Are her shoes dirty?
Yes, they are.

12. Are your hands clean?
Yes, they are.

13. Are your parents well?
Yes, they are.

14. Are the cases heavy?
No, they aren't heavy.

II. 2. Look. There's an air hostess.
3. Look. There's a policeman.
4. Look. There's an American car.
5. Look. There's a Volvo.
6. Look. There's an ice cream man.
7. Look. There's a new Mercedes.
8. Look. There's a Customs officer.
9. Look. There's an old Ford.
10. Look. There's an open shop.

III. 1. My coat and my hat, please.
2. Your passports, please.

3. Your tickets, please.
4. Three ice creams, please.
5. Sit down, please.
6. Come and see my friends.
7. Come upstairs and see it.
8. Look at that picture, please.

Lesson 20

I. 2. They're short. They aren't tall.
3. Those doors are shut. They aren't open.
4. These boxes are heavy. They aren't light.
5. My skirts are long. They aren't short.
6. We are hard-working. We aren't lazy.
7. You are young. You aren't old.
8. These dresses are new. They aren't old.
9. Those watches are small. They aren't big.
10. Those housewives are lazy. They aren't hard-working.
11. These policemen are fat. They aren't thin.
12. Your hands are clean. They aren't dirty.
13. Our hats are white. They aren't black.
14. These children are good. They aren't bad.

II. 2. Your students are hard-working.
3. These air hostesses are busy.
4. Your shoes are dirty.
5. These ice creams are nice.
6. The shops are shut.
7. Those tourists are thirsty.
8. His children's hands are clean.
9. These old housewives are tired.

10. Her boxes are light.
11. They're tall.
12. They're thin.

Lesson 21

I. 1. a, a, The, the
2. a, The
3. a, an, The, the
4. a, a, a
5. ×, an
6. a
7. ×, a
8. an, An
9. the, the, The, the, an
10. a, a, A

II. 1. me
2. my, her
3. your, I
4. He
5. Their
6. them, They
7. you, we, We
8. your, them
9. I
10. We, us

Lesson 22

I. 2. Give me a coffee, please.
3. Give him a coffee, too, please.
4. Give her this book, please.
5. Give us two pencils, please.
6. Give him his book, please.
7. Give them two train tickets, please.
8. Give her an ice cream, please.
9. Give them their passports, please.
10. Give us a pen, please.
11. Give me an egg, please.
12. Give her an umbrella, please.

II. 2. umbrellas/Which is your umbrella? This one?/No, not that one. My umbrella is the green one.

3. hats/Which is your hat? This one?/No, not that one. My hat is the black and grey one.
4. knives/Which is your knife? This one?/No, not that one. My knife is the small one.
5. glasses/Which is your glass? This one?/No, not that one. My glass is the empty one.
6. cases/Which is your case? This one?/No, not that one. My case is the red one.
7. cars/Which is your car? This one?/No, not that one. My car is the dirty one.
8. watches/Which is your watch? This one?/No, not that one. My watch is the blue one.

Lesson 23

I. 1. ones 2. one 3. ones, ones 4. ones
5. one 6. one 7. ones 8. one, one
9. ones, ones 10. one

II. 3. This one isn't old. It's a new one.
4. This one isn't small. It's a large one.
5. These aren't yellow. They're green.
6. These aren't short. They're long.
7. This one isn't blunt. It's a sharp one.
8. These aren't grey. They're white.
9. This one isn't black. It's a blue one.
10. This one isn't dirty. It's a clean one.

III. 2. Give him some books.
3. Give them some magazines.
4. Give them some pencils.
5. Give her some shoes.

6. Give us some pencils.
7. Give them some ice creams.
8. Give him some glasses.
9. Give them some tickets.
10. Give him some books.

IV. 2. The bottles on the cupboard are empty.
3. The knives on the box are blunt.
4. The plates on the table are nice.
5. The radios on the desk are old.
6. The ties on the chair are yellow.
7. The coats on the bed are thick.
8. The flowers on the dressing table are red.
9. The books on the shelf are big.
10. The carpets on the floor are old.

Lesson 24

I. 1. some, ones, ones 2. one, one, one, one
3. ones, ones, ones 4. some, ones, ones, ones, ones
5. one, one, one, one

II. 2. These, please. Those are very small.
3. These, please. Those are dirty.
4. These, please. Those are old.
5. These, please. Those are full.
6. These, please. Those are old.
7. These, please. Those are large.
8. These, please. Those are small.
9. These, please. Those are white.
10. These, please. Those are red.

Lesson 25

I. 1. a, the, the　2. a, the　3. The, the, the, the
4. a, The, the　5. a, a, a, The　6. a, The, a
7. the, an　8. an　9. a, a, The, the, the
10. a

II. 1. on　2. in　3. in　4. on　5. on　6. in
7. in　8. on　9. in　10. in　11. in, on　12. on

III. 2. No, there isn't a tin on the table. There is one in the refrigerator. It's big.
3. No, there isn't a bottle on the cupboard. There is one in the cupboard. It's full.
4. No, there isn't a table in the middle of the room. There is one in the kitchen. It's brown.
5. No, there isn't a knife on the plate. There is one on the shelf. It's blunt.
6. No, there isn't an umbrella on the floor. There is one on the chair. It's red.
7. No, there isn't a tie on the bed. There is one on the dressing table. It's orange.
8. No, there isn't an electric cooker on the right of the cupboard. There is one on the left of the cupboard. It's new.
9. No, there isn't a magazine on the desk. There is one on the bed. It's new.
10. No, there isn't a window on the left of the door. There is one on the right of the door. It's open.
11. No, there isn't a knife on the plate. There is one on the tin. It's green.
12. No, there isn't a box on the shelf. There is one on the refrigerator. It's empty.

Lesson 26

I. 1. a, the, a, the 2. The, the, the, the 3. a
4. an 5. a, a 6. an, The
7. the, a, the, a 8. a 9. an
10. an, the, an

II. 2. Where is your pencil?
It's on the book.
3. Where is my coat?
It's on the bed.
4. Where is your fork?
It's on my plate.
5. Where is the refrigerator?
It's in the kitchen.
6. Where is your pen?
It's in my schoolbag.
7. Where is my watch?
It's on the dressing table.
8. Where is the newspaper?
It's on the television.
9. Where is the stereo?
It's on the cupboard.
10. Where is the television?
It's in the middle of the room.

Lesson 27

I. in, in, in, in, on, near, in, on, on, near, on, near, on

II. 1. b. There are some magazines on the table.
c. There are some pens on the desk.
d. There are some books on the stereo.
e. There are some air hostesses on the aeroplane.
f. There are some black dogs in the garden.
g. There are some boys in the kitchen.
h. There are some office assistants in the office.
i. There are some bottles in the refrigerator.
j. There are some policewomen in the street.
2. b. Are there any windows in the room?
c. Are there any forks in the box?

d. Are there any magazines on the shelf?

e. Are there any eggs in the basket?

f. Are there any tins in the cupboard?

g. Are there any armchairs in the living room?

h. Are there any cups in the cupboard?

i. Are there any shoes near the door?

j. Are there any pictures on the wall?

III. 2. Are there any clean glasses in the cupboard?

No, there aren't any clean glasses in the cupboard. There are some dirty ones on the table.

3. Are there any big plates on the table?

No, there aren't any big plates on the table. There are some small ones on the shelf.

4. Are there any red flowers in the living room?

No, there aren't any red flowers in the living room. There are some yellow ones in the living room.

5. Are there any long spoons in the cupboard?

No, there aren't any long spoons in the cupboard. There are some short ones on this plate.

6. Are there any new chairs in the classroom?

No, there aren't any new chairs in the classroom. There are some old ones in the classroom.

7. Are there any full bottles on the floor?

No, there aren't any full bottles on the floor. There are some empty ones on the table.

8. Are there any dirty shirts on the bed?

No, there aren't any dirty shirts on the bed. There are some dirty ones on the chair.

9. Are there any blue hats in this shop?

No, there aren't any blue hats in this shop. There are some blue ones in that shop.

10. Are there any green leaves on the tree?
No, there aren't any green leaves on the tree. There are some yellow ones on the ground.

Lesson 28

I. 1. Where 2. Whose 3. Which 4. What make
5. What colour 6. Who 7. What 8. Where
9. Whose 10. What

II. 2. They're near the bed. They're in the vase.
3. They're near the television. They're under your armchair.
4. They're on the bed. They're in the bedroom.
5. They're in the kitchen. They're on the table.
6. They're in the kitchen. They're in the cupboard.
7. They're on the dressing table. They're in a box.
8. They're near the door. They're in the box.

III. 1. any, some 2. any, any 3. any, some
4. some, any, any 5. any 6. some

Lesson 29

I. 2. Make them, please.
3. Open the window, please.
4. Sharpen it, please.
5. Wash them, please.
6. Put them in the wardrobe, please.
7. Empty it, please.
8. Shut it, please.
9. Sharpen them, please.

10. Sweep it, please.
11. Turn on the light, please.
12. Turn off the stereo, please.
13. Dust it, please.
14. Put on your coat, please.
15. Clean it, please.
16. Close them, please.
17. Sharpen it, please.
18. Take off your coat, please.
19. Empty it, please.
20. Read it, please.

II. 1. Come in, please.
2. Sit down, please.
3. Give me an umbrella.
4. Open the window and air the room.
5. Open your book and read Lesson 1.
6. Give me your ticket, please.
7. Dust the table and then sweep the floor.
8. Put your skirt in the wardrobe.
9. Clean your bike.
10. Put the newspaper on the table.
11. Turn on the television.
12. Turn off the cooker.
13. Open your case.
14. Clean the classroom, please.
15. Put the books on the bookshelf.
16. Empty the plate.

Lesson 30

I. 1—f 2—i 3—j 4—g 5—e
6—h 7—c 8—a 9—b 10—d

注：答案不唯一，可能还有其他搭配。

II. 2. Empty the box, please.
3. Read this magazine, please.
4. Dust the cupboard, please.
5. Clean the electric cooker, please.
6. Make your bed, please.
7. Close your case, please.
8. Put on your tie, please.
9. Turn off the tap, please.
10. Sharpen these pencils, please.

Lesson 31

I. 2. No, she isn't. /She's in the kitchen. She's busy. /She's cooking a meal.
3. No, she isn't. /She's in the classroom. She's busy. /She's reading a book.
4. No, he isn't. /He's in the living room. He's tired. /He's reading a magazine.
5. No, he isn't. /He's in the kitchen. He's thirsty. /He's drinking tea.
6. No, he isn't. /He's in his office. He's tired. /He's cleaning the office.
7. No, he isn't. /He's at home. He's lazy. /He's watching television.
8. No, she isn't. /She's in her room. She's cold. /She's putting on some clothes.

II. 2. He is looking at the garden.
3. She is reading a newspaper.
4. It is running after a cat.
5. She is doing her homework.
6. He is putting on his tie.
7. She is cleaning the plates.
8. She is turning on the light.
9. She is typing a letter.
10. It is drinking its milk.

Lesson 32

I. 2. Is Sam climbing a tree?
Yes, he is.
3. Is Kathy cooking?
Yes, she is.
4. Is Miss Scott running?
Yes, she is.
5. Is Pedro making his bed?
Yes, he is.
6. Is Marie cleaning the room?
Yes, she is.
7. Is she drinking tea?
Yes, she is.
8. Is he cleaning his teeth?
Yes, he is.
9. Is she typing a letter?
Yes, she is.
10. Is your mother sweeping the floor?
Yes, she is.

II. 1. b. Is Sam sitting on a chair? No, he isn't.
What is he doing? He's standing.
Where is he standing? He's standing near the door.

c. Is Jane sitting in the garden? No, she isn't.
What is she doing? She's cooking.
Where is she cooking? She's cooking in the kitchen.

d. Is the dog drinking? No, it isn't.
What is it doing? It's eating a bone.
Where is it eating a bone? It's eating a bone under a tree.

e. Is Tony sweeping the floor? No, he isn't.
What is he doing? He's emptying a basket.
Where is he emptying a basket? He's emptying a basket in the garden.

f. Is the cat drinking its milk? No, it isn't.
What is it doing? It's running.
Where is it running? It's running across the lawn.

2. b. Who is turning on the light? Kathy is.
What about Mike? He's looking at a picture.

c. Who is running across the lawn? The cat is.
What about the dog? It's running after the cat.

d. Who is listening to the stereo? Sally is.
What about Ann? She's putting on her skirt.

e. Who is eating a bone? The dog is.
What about the cat? It's drinking its milk.

f. Who is climbing the tree in the garden? Jack is.
What about Jane? She's sitting under the tree.

Lesson 33

I. are, is, is shining, is not raining, are sitting, are eating, drinking, is looking, are playing, is ... doing, is sleeping

II. 2. Are the boys sweeping the floor?

Yes, they are.

Are the girls sweeping the floor, too?

No, they aren't. They're cleaning the desks and chairs.

3. Are you watching television?

Yes, we are.

Are your friends watching television, too?

No, they aren't. They're listening to the radio.

4. Are the dogs eating bones?

Yes, they are.

Are the cats eating bones, too?

No, they aren't. They're eating fish.

5. Are the children in this room writing?

Yes, they are.

Are the children in that room writing, too?

No, they aren't. They're crying.

Lesson 34

I. 2. They're waiting for the bus. /They're waiting at the bus stop.

3. They're doing their homework. /They're doing their homework in their room.

4. They're eating bones. /They're eating the bones in the garden.

5. They're looking at a dress. /The dress is red.

6. We're waiting for the next class. /Miss Scott is our

teacher.

7. They're watching television. /They're watching the news.

8. They're sleeping. /They're sleeping in their bedroom.

II. 1. turning 2. shining 3. running 4. taking
5. making 6. walking 7. typing 8. flying
9. putting 10. emptying 11. dusting 12. crying
13. shaving 14. shutting

Lesson 35

I. 1. across 2. out of 3. between 4. into 5. along
6. beside 7. under 8. for 9. after 10. into

II. 1. b. No, I'm not. I'm walking along the street. /I'm looking at the shop windows.

c. No, she isn't. She's coming out of the building. /She's reading a magazine.

d. No, they aren't. They're jumping out of the tree. / They're playing under the tree.

2. b. He's studying. /He's studying English.

c. They're washing. /They're washing the dishes.

d. It's eating. /It's eating a bone.

3. b. We're running. /We're running along the bank of a river.

c. They're looking at some photographs. /They're looking at the photographs in the kitchen.

d. She's cleaning her teeth. /She's cleaning her teeth in the bathroom.

Lesson 36

I. 1. Some, some 2. any 3. Some, some 4. some

5. any 6. Some 7. any 8. any

II. 1. beside 2. on, on 3. between 4. between
5. beside 6. along 7. on 8. out of
9. between 10. on, between, beside, on

Lesson 37

I. 1. b. I'm helping the girl.
c. I'm sitting on the chair.
d. I'm reading my book.
e. I'm drinking my milk.
f. I'm washing the dishes.
g. I'm making my bed.
h. I'm opening the window.
i. I'm sweeping the floor.
j. I'm doing my homework.

2. b. We're taking off our shoes.
c. We're putting our clothes in the wardrobe.
d. We're taking out our books.
e. We're turning on the lights.
f. We're turning off the taps.
g. We're coming into the kitchen.
h. We're cleaning our teeth.
i. We're going into the shop.
j. We're looking at the boats.

II. 3. I'm going to do my homework. Then I'm going to read a magazine.

4. We're going to type some letters. Then we're going to empty the baskets.

5. I'm going to sweep the floor. Then I'm going to clean

my father's car.

6. We're going to read our books. Then we're going to write some letters.
7. I'm going to turn off the television. Then I'm going to turn off the lights.
8. I'm going to put my clothes in the wardrobe. Then I'm going to shut the door.

Lesson 38

I. 2. We're going to wait for the bus.
3. I'm going to turn on the television.
4. I'm going to make a bookcase for my son.
5. We're going to do our homework.
6. I'm going to read a magazine.
7. We're going to paint our doors.
8. We're going to walk across the street.

II. 1. b. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to do my homework.
c. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to dust the bookcase.
d. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to clean my shoes.
e. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to put on my tie.
f. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to read a book.
g. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to cook.
h. No, I'm not, and I'm not going to shave.

2. b. I'm going to sharpen them now.
c. We're going to empty them now.
d. We're going to open them now.
e. We're going to dust them now.
f. I'm going to make it now.
g. I'm going to put on my coat now.

h. We're going to drink tea now.

Lesson 39

I. 1. b. Open the window, please. Don't open the door.

c. Walk along the road, please. Don't walk across the road.

d. Paint it green, please. Don't paint it yellow.

e. Sit on my right, please. Don't sit on my left.

f. Wash your shirts, please. Don't wash your trousers.

g. Give it to Tim, please. Don't give it to Tom.

h. Show him your passports, please. Don't show him your plane tickets.

i. Speak English, please. Don't speak Chinese.

j. Put it here, please. Don't put it there.

2. b. Don't put your shoes near the bed. Put them near the door.

c. Don't put your book on the dressing table. Put them on the desk.

d. Don't put that rug on the chair. Put it on the floor.

e. Don't put the television in the middle of the room. Put it in the corner.

f. Don't put the lamp near the bed. Put it on the desk.

g. Don't put the bottles on the floor. Put them in the cupboard.

h. Don't put your clothes on the bed. Put them in the wardrobe.

i. Don't put the butter on the refrigerator. Put it in the refrigerator.

j. Don't put the newspapers on the television. Put them

on the shelf.

II. 2. My son's putting on his trousers.
My son's putting his trousers on.
My son's putting them on.
3. We're writing down our names.
We're writing our names down.
We're writing them down.
4. She's taking off her hat.
She's taking her hat off.
She's taking it off.
5. John's turning on the stereo.
John's turning the stereo on.
John's turning it on.
6. My mother's turning off the cooker.
My mother's turning the cooker off.
My mother's turning it off.
7. They're throwing away the dirty bottles.
They're throwing the dirty bottles away.
They're throwing them away.
8. I'm putting on my watch.
I'm putting my watch on.
I'm putting it on.

Lesson 40

I. 2. I'm going to buy some sweets.
3. I'm going to sharpen my pencils.
4. He's going to give them to his friends.
5. She's going to wash it.
6. He's going to paint that cupboard.

7. They're going to give them to the dog.

8. He's going to put it in the kitchen.

II. 2. Please give Jim a pen.

Please give him a pen.

Please give a pen to Jim.

Please give a pen to him.

3. Please show my son your book.

Please show him your book.

Please show your book to my son.

Please show your book to him.

4. Please send the children some books.

Please send them some books.

Please send some books to the children.

Please send some books to them.

5. Please show the Customs officer your passport.

Please show him your passport.

Please show your passport to the Customs officer.

Please show your passport to him.

6. Please send your aunt a letter.

Please send her a letter.

Please send a letter to your aunt.

Please send a letter to her.

7. Please take your friends some flowers.

Please take them some flowers.

Please take some flowers to your friends.

Please take some flowers to them.

8. Please give the shopkeeper ten dollars.

Please give him ten dollars.

Please give ten dollars to the shopkeeper.

Please give ten dollars to him.

III. 2. He's going to send a letter to his parents.
He's going to send them a letter.
3. They're going to show their new house to me.
They're going to show me their new house.
4. He's going to give some books to us.
He's going to give us some books.
5. She's going to take a picture to her friend.
She's going to take her friend a picture.
6. She's going to show some beautiful carpets to the tourists.
She's going to show them some beautiful carpets.
7. I'm going to send my photographs to my mother.
I'm going to send her my photographs.
8. I'm going to give some new clothes to my son.
I'm going to give him some new clothes.

Lesson 41

I. 1—e, f, i, j 2—e, f 3—i 4—a, g, h, k
5—a, c, d, g 6—b 7—f 8—l
9—a, g, k 10—a, k

II. 2. a loaf of bread 3. half a pound of sugar
4. a bottle of milk 5. a bar of chocolate
6. a bottle of ink 7. a tin of tobacco
8. a cup of tea

III. 1. a, some 2. a, any 3. some 4. an, an
5. a, a, some 6. any, some, some
7. some, some, a, a 8. some

Lesson 42

I. 2. Is there a map in that book?

Yes, there is.

Is there a picture in that book, too?

No, there isn't. There isn't a picture there.

3. Is there a cake on that plate?

Yes, there is.

Is there a sandwich on that plate, too?

No, there isn't. There isn't a sandwich there.

4. Is there an egg in that tin?

Yes, there is.

Is there an apple in that tin, too?

No, there isn't. There isn't an apple there.

5. Is there a shirt in the wardrobe?

Yes, there is.

Is there a suit in the wardrobe, too?

No, there isn't. There isn't a suit there.

II. 2. Is there any water in that glass?

No, there isn't. There is some milk.

3. Is there any orange juice in that bottle?

No, there isn't. There is some tomato juice.

4. Is there any coffee in that cup?

No, there isn't. There is some tea.

5. Is there any cheese in the cupboard?

No, there isn't. There is some butter.

6. Is there any paper on that desk?

No, there isn't. There is some ink.

Lesson 43

I. 2. There are some pencils on the desk.
There is some paper on the shelf.
3. There are some cups in the cupboard.
There is some coffee in the cup.
4. There are some knives in the box.
There is some cheese on the plate.
5. There are some cigarettes in his pocket.
There is some tobacco in the tin.
6. There are some glasses on the table.
There is some beer in the glass.
7. There are some books in the bookcase.
There is some bread on the table.
8. There are some eggs on the plate.
There is some tea in the teapot.

II. 2. Are there any birds in the tree?
No, there aren't any birds in the tree.
Is there any paper on the desk?
No, there isn't any paper on the desk.
3. Are there any shoes under the bed?
No, there aren't any shoes under the bed.
Are there any clothes on the bed?
No, there aren't any clothes on the bed.
4. Are there any boys in the school?
No, there aren't any boys in the school.
Is there any tea in the teapot?
No, there isn't any tea in the teapot.
5. Are there any glasses on the table?
No, there aren't any glasses on the table.

Is there any water in the glass?

No, there isn't any water in the glass.

6. Are there any kettles in the shop?

No, there aren't any kettles in the shop.

Is there any milk in the bottle?

No, there isn't any milk in the bottle.

III. 2. There are three hundred pages in the book.

There are two pieces of paper on the desk.

3. There are twenty watches in the box.

There are two pieces of chocolate in the box.

4. There are five knives in the cupboard.

There are two loaves of bread in the bag.

5. There are six men in the office.

There are twelve bars of chocolate on the table.

6. There are three dogs in the garden.

There are ten slices of bread on the plate.

7. There are two mechanics in the room.

There are three bottles of beer on the table.

8. There are thirty boxes in the shop.

There are six hundred bars of soap in the boxes.

Lesson 44

I. 2. Can Anna make tea?

Yes, she can.

Can she make bread?

No, she can't, but she can make coffee.

Who can make bread?

John can make bread.

3. Can Mike ride a bike?

Yes, he can.

Can he drive a car?

No, he can't, but he can ride a horse.

Who can drive a car?

My father can drive a car.

4. Can they speak Dutch?

Yes, they can.

Can they speak Japanese?

No, they can't, but they can speak Korean.

Who can speak Japanese?

Mary can speak Japanese.

5. Can you see any clouds in the sky?

Yes, I can.

Can you see a bird?

No, I can't, but I can see an aeroplane.

Who can see a bird?

He can see a bird.

6. Can John write his name?

Yes, he can.

Can he write his address?

No, he can't, but he can write his phone number.

Who can write his address?

His brother can write his address.

II. 1. in front of 2. behind 3. behind 4. out of
5. on 6. over 7. along 8. on
9. in front of 10. in

Lesson 45

I. 1. b. Yes, I can. c. Yes, we/you can.
d. Yes, she can. e. Yes, he can.

f. Yes, I/we can.　　g. Yes, he can.

h. Yes, you can.　　i. Yes, she can.

j. Yes, I/we can.

2. b. No, we can't.　　c. No, they can't.

d. No, I can't.　　e. No, she can't.

f. No, he can't.　　g. No, we can't.

h. No, I/we can't.　　i. No, he can't.

j. No, she can't.

3. b. I can.　　c. My brother can.

d. David can.　　e. His friends can.

f. Xiao Li can.　　g. He can.

h. Her mother can.　　i. You can.

j. The men can.

II. 2. Can you open the door, please?

3. Can you type these letters, please?

4. Can you turn off the light, please?

5. Can you make some cakes, please?

6. Can you give me the teapot, please?

7. Can you show me the letter, please?

8. Can you turn on the tap, please?

9. Can you wash the dishes, please?

10. Can you take off your shoes, please?

Lesson 46

I. 2. William can write English but he can't write Chinese.

3. Sophie can type but she can't make tea.

4. I can climb up that tree but I can't jump off it.

5. A dog can swim but it can't climb up a tree.

6. She can play basketball but she can't play football.

7. They can speak Japanese but they can't write it.
8. He can buy a small house but he can't buy a big one.
9. You can lift this light box but you can't lift that heavy one.
10. I can read your handwriting but I can't read Bob's handwriting.

II. 2. Ken can speak French.
3. Mary can lift this one.
4. I/We can read the thick one.
5. Kathy can speak Japanese and Korean.
6. I/We can make bread.
7. He can teach in a university.
8. I/We can spell the two words.

Lesson 47

I. 1. b. Yes, I do. Give me three pencils, please.
c. Yes, I do. Give me twelve eggs, please.
d. Yes, I do. Give me one glass, please.
e. Yes, I do. Give me two boxes, please.
f. Yes, I do. Give me a large bar of chocolate, please.
g. Yes, I do. Give me one ice cream, please.
2. b. No, I don't. I don't like whisky.
c. No, I don't. I don't like cheese.
d. No, I don't. I don't like bread.
e. No, I don't. I don't like milk.
f. No, I don't. I don't like honey.
g. No, I don't. I don't like beer.

II. 3. Yes, please. I like tea.
4. No, thank you, but I want some beer.

5. Yes, please. I like biscuits.
6. Yes, please. I like black coffee.
7. No, thank you, but I want some honey.
8. No, thank you, but I want some coffee.
9. No, thank you, but I want some jam.
10. Yes, please. I like wine.

III. 2. No, I don't. But I like milk in my coffee.
3. No, I don't. But I like ice in my beer.
4. No, I don't. But I like jam on my bread.
5. No, I don't. But I like sugar in my milk.
6. No, I don't. But I like chocolate in an ice cream.
7. No, I don't. But I like lemon in my tea.
8. No, I don't. But I like cheese on my bread.
9. No, I don't. But I like fruit in a cake.
10. No, I don't. But I like salt in my soup.

Lesson 48

I. 3. I don't want this one. I want that one.
4. I don't want a cup of coffee. I want a cup of tea.
5. I don't want an old one. I want a new one.
6. I don't want any short ones. I want long ones.
7. I don't want blue ones. I want red ones.
8. I don't want any biscuits. I want a cake.
9. I don't want a cup. I want a glass.
10. I don't want a bottle of beer. I want a bottle of wine.

II. 2. I like green tea, but I don't like black tea.
3. I like red wine, but I don't like white wine.
4. I like honey, but I don't like jam.
5. I like white clothes, but I don't like black clothes.

6. I like oranges, but I don't like bananas.
7. I like American cars, but I don't like Korean cars.
8. I like English, but I don't like German.
9. I like Mercedes, but I don't like Ford.
10. I like cakes, but I don't like biscuits.

Lesson 49

I. 1. b. Yes, he does. He wants two pounds of beef.
c. Yes, he does. He wants three loaves of bread.
d. Yes, she does. She wants a bottle of wine.
e. Yes, she does. She wants a pound of grapes.
f. Yes, she does. She wants a pound of tomatoes.
g. Yes, he does. He wants two tins of tobacco.
2. b. No, she doesn't. She doesn't like lamb.
c. No, she doesn't. She doesn't like lettuces.
d. No, he doesn't. He doesn't like coffee.
e. No, she doesn't. She doesn't like beans.
f. No, he doesn't. He doesn't like mince.
g. No, he doesn't. He doesn't like butter.

II. 2. Does she like garden beans?/What about cabbages?
3. Does she like big potatoes?/What about cheese?
4. Does he like butter?/What about jam?
5. Does she like lamb?/What about steak?
6. Does he like eggs?/What about grapes?

III. 2. That woman wants a pound of sugar, and she wants a jar of honey, too.
3. The old man wants two pounds of peas, and he wants six tomatoes, too.
4. Tony wants two loaves of bread, and he wants a pound of

cheese, too.

5. His daughter wants two pieces of steak, and she wants a bottle of juice, too.
6. The little girl wants three bars of chocolate, and she wants a bottle of milk, too.
7. He wants two slices of bread, and he wants a cup of tea, too.
8. Marie wants two pounds of choice tomatoes, and she wants three fresh lettuces, too.

Lesson 50

I. 2. He likes butter, but he doesn't like cheese.

3. Emma likes honey, but she doesn't like sugar.
4. John likes grapes, but he doesn't like apples.
5. Mrs. Bird wants two fresh lettuces, but she doesn't want any garden peas.
6. Her husband likes coffee, but he doesn't like milk.
7. She wants some jam, but she doesn't want any butter.
8. Sophie wants some bread, but she doesn't want any cakes.
9. That man wants some eggs, but he doesn't want any mince.
10. The girl likes peaches, but she doesn't like bananas.
11. His son likes beef, but he doesn't like lamb.
12. The old woman wants some new potatoes, but she doesn't want any fresh cabbages.

II. 2. Does he like jam or honey?

He likes jam, but his brother doesn't. He likes honey.

3. Does she like grapes or bananas?

She likes grapes, but her husband doesn't. He likes bananas.

4. Do you like tea or coffee?
   I like tea, but Jane doesn't. She likes coffee.
5. Does your father like beans or peas?
   He likes beans, but my mother doesn't. She likes peas.
6. Do you like beef or lamb?
   I like beef, but Helen doesn't. She likes lamb.
7. Does your brother like wine or whisky?
   He likes wine, but his wife doesn't. She likes whisky.
8. Does Sam like tomatoes or potatoes?
   He likes tomatoes, but Tim doesn't. He likes potatoes.

Lesson 51

I. 2. It's always windy in winter and early spring.
3. Spring comes in March.
4. It sometimes rains in April and November.
5. It's often sunny in autumn.
6. It's always warm in May and October.
7. It often snows in December and January.
8. It's sometimes warm in winter.
9. The climate is often pleasant in May, June and October.
10. It's always very cold in December, January and February.

II. 1. It's always hot in August.
2. He's sometimes late for class.
3. It's always very pleasant here.
4. The students are always hard-working.
5. It's often windy in December and January.
6. The policemen are often very tired.
7. Students are sometimes lazy.

8. The weather is always bad here in winter.
9. We're often busy in spring.
10. The steak in this shop is always good.

Lesson 52

I. 1. is, comes, speaks, is
2. is, comes, speaks, is
3. Are, am, am, come, speak, is
4. are, Are, am, am, comes, speak, is
5. are, come, speak, is
6. do . . . come, come, are, speak, is
7. Do . . . come, come, are, speak, is
8. is, comes, speaks, is
9. is, comes, speaks, is
10. is, comes, speaks, is

II. 1. There are four seasons in a year, spring, summer, autumn and winter, and there are three months in a season.
2. There are twelve months in a year, and there are thirty or thirty-one days in a month.
3. There are three hundred and sixty-five days in a year.
4. It's very warm here in spring, but it rains sometimes.
5. It's very hot in summer. The sun shines every day.
6. It's often windy in autumn, and it rains sometimes.
7. It's always cold in winter, and it snows in December and January.
8. The climate in our city is very pleasant.

Lesson 53

I. 1. Mrs. Smith goes to the shops every day.
2. John cleans his teeth every day.
3. My son often rides a bike to school, but he sometimes goes by bus.
4. It's sometimes mild in the North.
5. You always come to class very early.
6. The students often ask interesting questions.
7. Mrs. Bird often cooks meals, and her husband sometimes does, too.
8. It sometimes rains in spring, but it often rains in autumn, too.
9. The baby next door cries every day.
10. She always likes books, and she often reads at home.

II. 2. The sun doesn't shine every day in summer.
3. It isn't always windy in the South.
4. He doesn't always speak English.
5. It isn't always pleasant here in spring.
6. I don't often buy fresh fruit.
7. They don't work hard every day.
8. She doesn't often do her homework in her bedroom.
9. You don't always like tomatoes.
10. His father doesn't always wash the dishes.
11. It isn't often windy here.
12. It isn't always wet in Qingdao.

III. 2. He likes Chinese best.
3. He likes May best.
4. She likes *New Concept English* best.
5. I like our English teacher best.

6. He likes peaches best.
7. She likes the red one best.
8. She likes green best.
9. They like Greece best.
10. I like the Brazilian team best.

Lesson 54

I. 1. b. She's French. She comes from France.
c. I come from Norway. I'm Norwegian.
d. He comes from Germany. He's German.
e. They're Russian. They come from Russia.
f. He comes from Canada. He's Canadian.
g. I'm Australian. I come from Australia.
h. He's Turkish. He comes from Turkey.
i. She comes from Japan. She's Japanese.
j. He comes from Thailand. He's Thai.

2. b. My friend comes from Japan.
c. They come from Poland.
d. My mother comes from Australia.
e. Marie comes from Turkey.
f. Dave comes from Austria.
g. These tourists come from India.
h. That man comes from Nigeria.
i. That old woman comes from Brazil.
j. Those young men come from England.

II.

1. teaches	2. gives	3. plays	4. lives
5. shines	6. rises	7. goes	8. watches
9. looks	10. comes	11. climbs	12. does
13. snows	14. walks	15. likes	16. wants

17. sees　　18. takes

Lesson 55

I. 1. ×, the, the, the　　2. ×, the　　3. ×
4. ×　　5. the, the, the　　6. ×, ×, ×
7. the　　8. ×, ×　　9. the, The
10. The, ×

II. wakes, gets, washes, cleans, goes, eats, drinks,
walks, is, shows, are,
eats, drinks, sits, reads, does
eats, watches, talks

III. 2. They often ask questions after class.
3. They are always busy.
4. He usually goes to work early.
5. He does his homework in the evening.
6. She goes to the shops every day.
7. I/We often play football in the afternoon.
8. She usually goes to school in the morning.
9. She goes to bed early every evening.
10. I always stay at home in the evening.

Lesson 56

I. 1. lives, is, gets, goes, likes, plays, gets, does, watches, goes
2. are, teach, go, leave, come, read, listen, like

Lesson 57

I. 2. The boys often swim in the sea in summer, but they are swimming in the river today.

3. Mary often buys sugar, but she's buying some honey at the moment.
4. My sister watches television every evening, but she is listening to her stereo this evening.
5. Our teacher often stands in front of the blackboard, but he/she is sitting at the desk today.
6. We often walk along the banks of the river, but we are walking in the park today.
7. He usually arrives home early, but he's coming home late this afternoon.
8. Ken and Ann often speak English, but they are speaking French now.
9. I often drink coffee, but I am drinking tea at the moment.
10. Sam usually does his homework in school, but he is doing it at home today.

II. 1. b. No, they aren't. They're doing their homework./ No, they don't. They often do their homework in the afternoon.
c. No, I'm not. I'm eating my lunch./No, I don't. I usually eat my lunch early in the afternoon.
d. No, he isn't. He's going to school on foot./No, he doesn't. He often goes to school by car.
e. No, it isn't. It's snowing./No, it doesn't. It usually snows in January.
2. b. No, we aren't/I'm not. We're/I'm playing games./ No, we/I don't. We/I often watch television in the evening.
c. No, she isn't. She's drinking tea./No, she doesn't. She usually drinks coffee at this time every day.

d. No, he isn't. He's shaving. /No, he doesn't. He usually listens to the radio at this time in the morning.

e. No, they aren't. They're cleaning the doors. /No, they don't. They wash the floor every day.

Lesson 58

I. 1. b. I'm writing a letter to my mother. /No, I don't write home every week, but I sometimes write home.

c. She's cleaning her shoes. /No, she doesn't clean her shoes every day, but she cleans her shoes every week.

d. She's sweeping the floor. /No, she doesn't often sweep the floor, but she sometimes sweeps it.

e. They're watching television. /No, they don't always watch television at night, but they sometimes watch it at night.

2. b. He is taking our son to school. /No, he doesn't. He usually takes him to school at seven.

c. I am waiting for a bus. /No, I don't. I usually wait for a bus at seven thirty.

d. They are doing their homework. /No, they don't. They usually do their homework in the evening.

e. He is typing letters. /No, he doesn't. He usually types letters at nine in the morning.

II. 2. It's two o'clock. We usually go to work at two.

3. It's five o'clock. You usually cook a meal at five.

4. It's four o'clock. The children usually come home from school at four.

5. It's ten o'clock. She usually goes to bed at ten.

6. It's eight o'clock. I usually do my homework at eight.
7. It's nine o'clock. He usually reads a newspaper at nine.
8. It's eleven o'clock. I usually go to the shops at eleven.
9. It's one o'clock. She usually cooks a meal at one.
10. It's four o'clock. We usually drink tea at four.

Lesson 59

I. 1. b. I have a pen, but I don't have a pencil.
c. I have a bike, but I don't have a car.
d. I have an envelope, but I don't have a pad of paper.
e. I have an egg, but I don't have a spoon.
f. I have a bottle of beer, but I don't have a glass.
g. I have an apple, but I don't have an orange.
2. b. They have some boxes, but they don't have any baskets.
c. They have some brothers, but they don't have any sisters.
d. They have some cups, but they don't have any saucers.
e. They have some hats, but they don't have any coats.
f. They have some peaches, but they don't have any pears.
g. They have some spoons, but they don't have any forks.

II. 2. We have some milk, but we don't have any sugar.
3. We have some writing paper, but we don't have any ink.
4. We have some soap, but we don't have any water.
5. We have some beef, but we don't have any lamb.
6. We have some jam, but we don't have any honey.

7. We have some whisky, but we don't have any wine.
8. We have some chalk, but we don't have any glue.
9. We have some cheese, but we don't have any beer.
10. We have some mince, but we don't have any steak.

III. 1. b. Yes, they do. c. Yes, we do.
d. Yes, I/we do. e. Yes, they do.
f. Yes, I/we do. g. Yes, we do.
2. b. No, I/we don't. c. No, we don't.
d. No, they don't. e. No, they don't.
f. No, I/we don't. g. No, I/we don't.

Lesson 60

I. 1. b. Do you have any wine?
Yes, I do. I have a glass of red wine.
c. Do you have any whisky?
Yes, I do. I have a bottle of Scotch whisky.
d. Do you have any soap?
Yes, I do. I have two bars of soap.
e. Do you have any bread?
Yes, I do. I have two loaves of bread.
f. Do you have any ink?
Yes, I do. I have a bottle of black ink.
2. b. Do they have any German cars?
No, they don't have any German ones. They only have Japanese ones.
c. Do they have any big potatoes?
No, they don't have any big ones. They only have small ones.

d. Do they have any red apples?

No, they don't have any red ones. They only have green ones.

e. Do they have any long spoons?

No, they don't have any long ones. They only have short ones.

f. Do they have any new plates?

No, they don't have any new ones. They only have old ones.

II. 2. What's the time?

It's four o'clock.

I'm going to wash some clothes. Do we have any soap?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

3. What's the time?

It's seven o'clock.

I'm going to do my homework. Do we have any blue ink?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

4. What's the time?

It's six o'clock.

I'm going to eat my breakfast. Do we have any bread and milk?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

5. What's the time?

It's eight o'clock.

I'm going to drink a glass of beer. Do we have any clean glasses?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

6. What's the time?

It's nine o'clock.

I'm going to write some letters. Do we have any writing paper and envelopes?

Yes, we do. What else do you want?

Lesson 61

I. 1. b. Yes, he does. He has a clean glass.

c. Yes, she does. She has a new radio.

d. Yes, he does. He has a black umbrella.

e. Yes, she does. She has a big orange.

2. b. No, he doesn't. He only has a red tie.

c. No, she doesn't. She only has a room.

d. No, he doesn't. He only has a fork.

e. No, he doesn't. He only has a radio.

II. 1. b. Does Linda have any pencils and pens?

She has some pencils, but she doesn't have any pens.

c. Does George have any books and pads of paper?

He has some books, but he doesn't have any pads of paper.

d. Does the girl have any oranges and peaches?

She has some oranges, but she doesn't have any peaches.

e. Does the man have any newspapers and magazines?

He has some newspapers, but he doesn't have any magazines.

2. b. Does he have any paper and ink?

He has some paper, but he doesn't have any ink.

c. Does she have any bread and jam?

She has some bread, but she doesn't have any jam.

d. Does Dave have any tea and sugar?

He has some tea, but he doesn't have any sugar.

III. 2. She must stay at home.

3. She must see a dentist.

4. He must take some medicine.

5. He must stay in bed.

6. You must take her to a doctor.

7. You must call the doctor.

8. You must drink more water.

9. He must see a doctor.

10. You must take some medicine.

IV. 2. Because she is hungry.

3. Because she wants an ice cream.

4. Because she has measles.

5. Because she likes English.

6. Because I am tired.

7. Because it is late.

8. Because I have a headache.

Lesson 62

I. 2. I must always be early for school. I mustn't be late.

3. We must always drink clean water. We mustn't drink dirty water.

4. He must always put on a clean shirt. He mustn't put on a dirty one.

5. She must always drink milk. She mustn't drink beer.

6. You must always go out in the fresh air. You mustn't stay at home.

7. They must always speak English. They mustn't speak

Chinese.

8. We must always remember the telephone number. We mustn't forget it.
9. You must always study first. You mustn't watch television after school.
10. The children must always play in the garden. They mustn't play on the banks of a river.

II. 2. Yes, you must.
3. Yes, he must.
4. Yes, I must.
5. Yes, you must.
7. No, they mustn't.
8. No, you/we mustn't.
9. No, you mustn't.
10. No, he mustn't.

III. 2. I have a bad headache.
3. He/She feels ill.
4. He has a temperature.
5. She has a bad toothache.
6. They have mumps.
7. I have a stomachache.
8. He/She is thirsty.
9. He has measles.
10. She has an earache.

Lesson 63

I. 2. Can I use your pencil?
3. Can I use your telephone?
4. Can I sit here?
5. Can I borrow your bike?
6. Can I come to your house?
7. Can I use a dictionary in the exam?
8. Can I stay in bed today?
9. Can I look at your new dress?
10. Can I ask you a question?

II. 2. You must take the medicine for three days.
3. I must play the piano for about an hour every day.

4. She must work for eight hours every day.
5. You must stay in hospital for about two weeks.
7. I can live here for about three months.
8. He can stay with his grandmother for about a month.
9. Students can keep books from the library for two months.
10. She can play in the garden for about two hours.

III. 2. Because she has measles.
3. Because you have an earache.
4. Because he has a toothache.
5. Because you have flu.
6. Because they have mumps.
7. Because he has a temperature.
8. Because she has a stomachache.
9. Because he has a bad cough.
10. Because she has a headache.

Lesson 64

I. 2. You mustn't put the dishes here. You must put them on the shelf.
3. You mustn't go to school by bike today. You must go to school by bus.
4. You mustn't eat meat. You must eat fresh fruit.
5. You mustn't look at your books. You must look at the blackboard.
6. You mustn't watch television. You must do your homework.
7. You mustn't drive so quickly. You must drive slowly.
8. You mustn't talk in the library. You must read your books.
9. You mustn't see a dentist. You must see a doctor.

10. You mustn't play with matches. You must play in the garden.

II. 2. My son has a temperature, so I must take him to the doctor's.

3. It's raining very hard, so I'm going to work by taxi.

4. He feels cold, so he must put on more clothes.

5. I must catch the train, so the taxi driver must drive quickly.

6. It's always warm in Greece in autumn, so tourists often go there then.

7. The lettuces are not fresh today, so I do not want them.

8. His car is in the garage today, so he is going to work by bus.

Lesson 65

I. 1. themselves 2. myself 3. yourself 4. myself

5. yourself 6. himself 7. itself 8. herself

9. herself 10. himself

II. 2. Linda usually gets up at six in the morning, but this morning she isn't going to.

3. He usually goes to bed at ten at night, but tonight he isn't going to.

4. They usually walk along the beach at six thirty in the morning, but this morning they aren't going to.

5. We usually eat our lunch at noon every day, but today we aren't going to.

6. Mother usually cooks a meal at five in the afternoon, but this afternoon she isn't going to.

7. They usually play basketball at four in the afternoon, but this afternoon they aren't going to.

8. He usually goes to work at twenty to eight in the morning, but this morning he isn't going to.

III. 2. I'm six years old. /I can go to school.
3. I'm fifteen years old. /I can wash my clothes.
4. I'm eighteen years old. /I can go to work.
5. I'm sixteen years old. /I can cook.
6. I'm seventeen years old. /I can type.
7. I'm twenty-four years old. /I can drive a car.
8. I'm thirty years old. /I can teach English.

Lesson 66

I. 2. It's October 1st.
3. It's January 1st.
4. It's March 8th.
5. It's May 1st.
6. It's December 25th.
7. It's July 6th.
8. It's August 15th.
9. It's November 25th.
10. It's June 1st.

II. 2. It's three forty.
3. It's two thirty-five.
4. It's four forty-five.
5. It's eleven fifty.
6. It's one fifteen.
7. It's ten fifty-five.
8. It's eight twenty-five.

III. 1. in 2. on 3. in 4. at 5. in
6. at 7. on 8. at 9. at, at 10. at, in, at, in

Lesson 67

I. 1. was 2. was 3. was 4. were 5. was
6. was 7. Were 8. was 9. was 10. were

II. 1. b. Yes, it was.
c. Yes, she was.
d. Yes, I was.
e. Yes, it was.
f. Yes, he was.
g. Yes, she was.

h. Yes, he was.

2. b. No, I wasn't. c. No, it wasn't.
   d. No, I wasn't. e. No, she wasn't.
   f. No, he wasn't. g. No, she wasn't.
   h. No, it wasn't.

III. 1. b. Yes, he was./No, she wasn't. She was at school.
   c. Yes, it was./No, it wasn't. It was cloudy.
   d. Yes, I was./No, she wasn't. She was at the office.
   e. Yes, she was./No, he wasn't. He was at the hairdresser's.

2. b. No, she wasn't./No, she wasn't there, either.
   c. No, it wasn't./No, it wasn't rainy last week, either.
   d. No, I wasn't./No, I wasn't at the dentist's, either.
   e. No, he wasn't./No, he wasn't at home on Sunday, either.

Lesson 68

I. 2. She was in her office.
   3. I was in the country.
   4. He was in hospital.
   5. She/He was in Beijing.
   6. She was at the hairdresser's.
   7. She was at church.
   8. It was at home.

II. 2. He was at the baker's at about five.
   3. He was at the grocer's at about ten.
   4. I was at home on Tuesday.
   5. She was at the stationer's at about four.

6. She was at the butcher's at eleven.
7. She was at the office on Wednesday.
8. I was at the greengrocer's at nine.

Lesson 69

I. 1. in, on 2. at, on 3. on 4. in 5. in, in
6. at, on 7. in, in 8. at, on 9. at 10. at, on
11. at 12. on 13. at, on 14. on 15. in

II. 3. No, we weren't. /We were in the park.
4. Yes, they were. /They were there from eight thirty to nine thirty.
5. No, they weren't. /They were in Austria.
6. No, I wasn't. /we weren't. /I was/We were in Japan.
7. Yes, I was. /we were. /I was/We were there at about five.
8. No, they weren't. /They were at church.

III. 2. They were at the game.
3. They were at the party.
4. They were at the car race.
5. I was/We were in the office.
6. We were in our country house.
7. We were at my mother's.
8. They were at the grocer's.

Lesson 70

I. 1. c. Yes, there were. There were some people there on July 11th.
d. No, there weren't. There weren't any boys there on Wednesday.

e. No, there weren't. There weren't any tins there on Saturday.

f. Yes, there were. There were some students there on June 1st.

g. Yes, there were. There were some good cars there on June 30th.

2. c. Yes, there was. There was some butter in the refrigerator last week.

d. No, there wasn't. There wasn't any tea at the grocer's on Monday.

e. Yes, there was. There was some milk at the dairy on Thursday.

f. Yes, there was. There was some soap in the bathroom on Sunday.

g. No, there wasn't. There wasn't any writing paper and ink at the stationer's on Tuesday.

II. 1. In 2. On 3. At 4. By
5. On 6. In 7. At 8. On

Lesson 71

I. 1. worked 2. washed 3. studied 4. finished
5. arrived 6. played 7. emptied 8. shaved
9. rained 10. watched

II. 2. The boys often play in the playground, but they played in the garden yesterday afternoon.

3. Bob often studies in the classroom, but he studied in the library yesterday morning.

4. Mr. Zhang often stays at home at night, but he stayed in the office last night.

5. She often watches television in the evening, but she listened to the stereo yesterday evening.
6. Peter often shaves in the morning, but he shaved at noon the day before yesterday.
7. My husband often arrives home at about five, but he arrived at six yesterday evening.
8. You often want oranges, but you wanted bananas yesterday.
9. It often rains in October, but it snowed yesterday.
10. He often walks to work at seven forty-five, but he walked to work at seven fifteen yesterday morning.

III. 2. Yes, she did. She washed them. /No, he didn't. He didn't wash them.
3. Yes, he did. He enjoyed himself. /No, she didn't. She didn't enjoy herself.
4. Yes, he did. He dried them. /No, he didn't. He didn't dry them.
5. Yes, she did. She cleaned it. /No, he didn't. He didn't dust them.
6. Yes, he did. He sharpened it. /No, he didn't. He didn't empty it.
7. Yes, she did. She cooked it. /No, she didn't. She didn't bake any bread.
8. Yes, I did. I turned it on. /No, I didn't. I didn't turn it off.
9. Yes, she did. She telephoned her boss. /No, she didn't. She didn't telephone her sister.
10. Yes, I did. I opened it. /No, I didn't. I didn't open them.

Lesson 72

I. 2. The doctor called the day before yesterday.
3. She arrived home at nine fifty last night.
4. I telephoned him at three twenty-five yesterday afternoon.
5. They played in the garden yesterday afternoon.
6. He painted the floor the day before yesterday.
7. We enjoyed ourselves the night before last.
8. She cleaned the kitchen the day before yesterday.

II. 2. Mrs. Scott cleaned the shelves yesterday. /She cleaned the cooker.
3. I dried the glasses yesterday. /I dried the cups.
4. They played football yesterday. /They played basketball.
5. She washed her clothes yesterday. /She washed the dishes.
6. Mr. Martin painted the door yesterday. /He painted the windows.
7. Marie dusted the dressing table yesterday. /She dusted the cupboard.
8. We cleaned the classroom yesterday. /We cleaned the blackboard.

Lesson 73

I.

1. flew	2. had	3. went	4. drank	5. swam
6. saw	7. found	8. ate	9. met	10. came
11. did	12. took	13. said	14. sat	15. ran
16. made	17. lost	18. gave	19. spoke	20. caught

II. was, went, were, had, ate, drank
were, were, dropped, ate, dropped, ate

liked, enjoyed, enjoyed

III. 1. b. Yes, she does. She typed some the day before yesterday.

c. Yes, he does. He caught some yesterday afternoon.

d. Yes, it does. It climbed a tree last Friday.

e. Yes, I/we do. I/We painted it last year.

f. Yes, I/we do. I/We read one yesterday morning.

g. Yes, they do. They drank a glass yesterday evening.

h. Yes, I/we do. I/We saw a Mercedes the day before yesterday.

i. Yes, he does. He ate some last Friday evening.

j. Yes, I/we do. I/We met him/her in August 2001.

2. b. She emptied it yesterday evening.

c. They bought it last Tuesday.

d. I/We drank it last night.

e. I/We met her the day before yesterday.

f. I/We saw her in February.

g. He closed it yesterday evening.

h. She turned them on before dinner.

IV. 2. Tim didn't write a letter, but John wrote a letter.

3. Paul didn't go home early, but David went home early.

4. I didn't swim in the sea, but Marie swam in the sea.

5. I didn't go to France, but Ann went to France.

6. The dog didn't take the meat, but the cat took the meat.

7. You didn't read the magazine, but I read the magazine.

8. We didn't see his car, but they saw his car.

9. Mark didn't lose his way, but Sam lost his way.

10. Mary didn't drink her tea, but Ann drank her tea.

11. I didn't give him any money, but they gave him some money.
12. The girls didn't make a noise, but the boys made a noise.

Lesson 74

I. 2. I understood the woman. I didn't understand the man.
3. She washed the glasses. She didn't wash the cups.
4. I/We ate beef. I/We didn't eat lamb.
5. He gave me a tie. He didn't give me a watch.
6. I/We met a Spanish tourist. I/We didn't meet an Italian tourist.
7. They did their homework at home. They didn't do it at school.
8. He went to work by car. He didn't go to work by bus.

II. 2. The boys and girls enjoyed themselves very much last weekend.
3. Mrs. Mills washed the dishes carefully yesterday evening.
4. We met Mary in the street this morning and greeted her warmly.
5. Tim ran quickly and caught the school bus yesterday morning.
6. They walked slowly to the park last Saturday evening.
7. Jack's boss spoke to him angrily last week.
8. The students worked very well last year.

Lesson 75

I. 1. wore 2. swam 3. wanted 4. had

5. said 6. greeted 7. cut 8. bought
9. taught 10. stood 11. got 12. knew
13. took 14. met 15. read 16. understood
17. drove 18. answered 19. told 20. lost

II. 1. asked 2. looked 3. answered 4. studied
5. rained 6. came 7. started 8. wanted
9. met 10. bought 11. ran 12. went

III. Did it have any windows?
Yes. It had two windows.
What else did the living room have?
Did it have any bookshelves?
Yes. It had one bookshelf.
Did it have any lamps?
Yes. It had two lamps.
Did the room have any chairs?
Yes. It had four chairs.
What else did the room have?
Did it have any tables?
Yes. It had one table.

IV. 2. John saw a dog and Pat saw a dog, too.
3. Sam found his book and Jane found her book, too.
4. Dave cut his finger and William cut his finger, too.
5. Miss Li read the book and Miss Chen read the book, too.
6. Tim ate three oranges and Tony ate three oranges, too.
7. Doris lost her bag and Peter lost his bag, too.
8. Mary drove quickly and Mary's husband drove quickly, too.
9. Paul drank some tea and Kathy drank some tea, too.
10. Mike taught English yesterday and Carol taught English yesterday, too.

Lesson 76

I. left, went, arrived, jumped, swam, made, brought, cooked, ate, drank, played, slept, caught

II. 2. Yes, I/we did. /I/We played yesterday afternoon. / No, I/we didn't.

3. Yes, she did. /She went shopping three days ago. /No, he didn't.

4. Yes, he did. /He talked to the shop assistant the day before yesterday. /No, he didn't.

5. Yes, they did. /They went to see a doctor a week ago. / No, they didn't.

6. Yes, he did. /He came at seven this morning. /No, he didn't.

Lesson 77

I. 1. wrote 2. went 3. ate 4. felt 5. washed
6. slept 7. met 8. came 9. bought 10. got

II. 2. What did Jack do? He saw some nice cars.
Where did he see them? He saw them at the car race.
When did he see them? He saw them four days ago.

3. What did Marie do? She ate two bars of chocolate.
Where did she eat them? She ate them at home.
When did she eat them? She ate them yesterday.

4. What did she do? She typed some letters.
Where did she type them? She typed them in her office.
When did she type them? She typed them yesterday morning.

5. What did your father do? He painted the bookcase.
Where did he paint it? He painted it in the garage.

When did he paint it? He painted it a week ago.

6. What did you do? We met our dentist.
   Where did you meet him? We met him at the bus stop.
   When did you meet him? We met him last Tuesday.
7. What did they do? They sold their house.
   Where did they sell it? They sold it in London.
   When did they sell it? They sold it in 1998.
8. What did he do? He telephoned his brother.
   Where did he telephone him? He telephoned him in Beijing.
   When did he telephone him? He telephoned him last month.

III. 2. I must buy some writing paper and an envelope. I want to write a letter.
3. I must wash my hands. I want to eat my lunch.
4. I must sit down. I want to have a good rest.
5. I must boil some water. I want to have a cup of tea.
6. I must go to the greengrocer's. I want to cook a meal.
7. I must get up early. I want to catch the first bus.
8. I must talk to the salesman. I want to buy a refrigerator.

Lesson 78

I. 2. Did you lose your way in the city a year ago?
   No, I didn't. I lost my way in the country.
3. Did you sit at the front of the class last month?
   No, I didn't. I sat at the back of the class.
4. Did you buy a car the day before yesterday?
   No, I didn't. I bought a bike.

5. Did you travel to France in May 2000?
   No, I didn't. I travelled to France in June 2000.
6. Did you arrive here on August 2nd last year?
   No, I didn't. I arrived here on August 3rd last year.

II. have, is, is, go, are, go
walked, went, opened, walked, was, were
were, opened, looked, talked, talked, waited
arrived, was, didn't say, said, Sit, start, gave,

Lesson 79

I. 1. a lot of 2. any 3. some/a lot of, any 4. some
5. any 6. much/any 7. some/a lot of
8. many/any, many/any 9. some/a lot of
10. any, any, a lot of/some, any, a lot of, a lot of

II. 1. b. He's got a shirt, but he hasn't got a tie.
c. They've got a book, but they haven't got a map.
d. She's got a cup, but she hasn't got a glass.
e. She's got a spoon, but she hasn't got a fork.
f. I've got a desk, but I haven't got a chair.
2. b. They've got some apples, but they haven't got any bananas.
c. He's got some stamps, but he hasn't got any envelopes.
d. We've got some peas, but we haven't got any beans.
e. She's got some cakes, but she hasn't got any biscuits.
f. He's got some books, but he hasn't got any magazines.
3. b. He's got some lamb, but he hasn't got any mince.
c. She's got some honey, but she hasn't got any sugar.

d. We've got some cheese, but we haven't got any jam.

e. They've got some paper, but they haven't got any glue.

f. She's got some tea, but she hasn't got any juice.

4. b. He's got a lot of bottles of beer, but he hasn't got many bottles of wine.

c. They've got a lot of newspapers, but they haven't got many magazines.

d. She's got a lot of pears, but she hasn't got many peaches.

e. He's got a lot of pens, but he hasn't got many watches.

f. I've got a lot of cabbages, but I haven't got many lettuces.

5. b. I've got a lot of medicine, but I haven't got much water.

c. She's got a lot of butter, but she hasn't got much sugar.

d. They've got a lot of lamb, but they haven't got much beef.

e. He's got a lot of tobacco, but he hasn't got much whisky.

f. He's got a lot of beer, but he hasn't got much tea.

Lesson 80

I. 2. I need some water.

3. He needs five thousand *yuan*.

4. You need some sleep.

5. She needs some medicine.

6. We need some food.
7. I need some meat and vegetables.
8. I need some paper and ink.
9. She needs two aspirins.
10. We need some beer and wine.

II. 2. No, she doesn't. She must go to the newsagent's to buy some.
3. No, I/we don't. I/We must go to the butcher's to buy some.
4. No, I/we don't. I/We must go to the baker's to get some.
5. No, I/we don't. I/We must go to the greengrocer's to buy some.
6. No, we don't. We must go to the chemist's to get some.
7. No, I/we don't. I/We must go to the grocer's to buy some.
8. No, he doesn't. He must go to the newsagent's to get some.
9. No, we don't. We must go to the grocer's to buy some.
10. No, we don't. We must go to the chemist's to get some.

Lesson 81

I. 2. Jane usually has eggs and milk for breakfast.
3. Sam had two sandwiches, an apple and a glass of beer for lunch yesterday.
4. Ann is having an apple and salad for lunch.
5. My friends and I had roast beef, potatoes and six glasses of beer for dinner.
6. I sometimes have cheese and biscuits after a meal.

II. 2. Susan and Jack had a meal in the restaurant at six yesterday evening.

3. My friends and I had a party in my house two weeks ago.

4. All the boys and girls had a good time in the park last weekend.

5. Teachers and students have their summer holiday in July and August.

6. Tony had a swim in the sea last Sunday evening.

7. The students are having their English lesson in their classroom.

8. My child usually has two slices of bread with cheese, an egg and milk for breakfast.

III. 1—i 2—g 3—j 4—k 5—h 6—l
7—c 8—a 9—d 10—e 11—f 12—b

Lesson 82

I. 2. They had wine, but they didn't have beer.

3. He had tea, but he didn't have dinner.

4. I/We had a party, but I/we didn't have a holiday.

5. She had a lesson, but she didn't have a meeting.

6. I had a haircut, but I didn't have any new shoes.

7. They had an English lesson, but they didn't have a German lesson.

8. I had some biscuits, but I didn't have a glass of milk.

II. 3. You had a swim in the sea the day before yesterday, and I did, too.

4. They are having a holiday now, but we aren't.

5. Sam can have a glass of beer, but his son can't.

6. She must have a lesson now, and you must, too.
7. Mr. Scott had a bad day yesterday, but Mrs. Scott didn't.
8. You had a good time at the party last night, and we did, too.
9. My friend has a walk along the beach every evening, and I do, too.
10. Jill usually has lunch at home, but Jim doesn't.

Lesson 83

I. 2. When is he going to have a swim?
He has already had a swim.
When did he have a swim?
He had a swim two days ago.
3. When are you going to have a holiday in the country?
I/We have already had a holiday in the country.
When did you have a holiday in the country?
I/We had a holiday in the country last month.
4. When is she going to have an English lesson?
She has already had an English lesson.
When did she have an English lesson?
She had an English lesson this morning.
5. When are they going to have a meal in the restaurant?
They have already had a meal in the restaurant.
When did they have a meal in the restaurant?
They had a meal in the restaurant last week.
6. When are you going to have lunch?
I/We have already had lunch.
When did you have lunch?

I/We had lunch at twelve o'clock.

7. When is he going to have a drink?

He has already had a drink.

When did he have a drink?

He had a drink half an hour ago.

8. When are they going to have a party?

They have already had a party.

When did they have a party?

They had a party on July 15th.

9. When is she going to have a bath?

She has already had a bath.

When did she have a bath?

She had a bath at seven this morning.

10. When are you going to have dinner?

I/We have already had dinner.

When did you have dinner?

I/We had dinner an hour ago.

II. 1. b. They haven't had a party.

c. He hasn't had a swim in the sea.

d. I haven't had an orange.

e. He hasn't had a haircut.

f. She hasn't had a meal in the restaurant.

g. I haven't had a talk with you.

h. She hasn't had a glass of milk.

2. b. She hasn't had any cheese.

c. We haven't had any lamb.

d. He hasn't had any fruit.

e. They haven't had any whisky.

f. He hasn't had any beer.

g. I haven't had any butter.

h. They haven't had any meat.

Lesson 84

I. 1. b. Yes, she has. She has just had a lot of vegetables.

c. Yes, they have. They have just had a lot of bananas.

d. Yes, he has. He has just had a lot of cakes.

e. Yes, she has. She has just had a lot of milk.

f. Yes, I/we have. I/We have just had a lot of coffee.

g. Yes, they have. They have just had a lot of fruit.

h. Yes, he has. He has just had a lot of medicine.

2. b. No, they haven't. They haven't had any cakes at all.

c. No, he hasn't. He hasn't had any wine at all.

d. No, she hasn't. She hasn't had any milk at all.

e. No, I/we haven't. I/We haven't had any steak at all.

f. No, they haven't. They haven't had any beef at all.

g. No, he hasn't. He hasn't had any aspirins at all.

h. No, I/we haven't. I/We haven't had any water at all.

II. 2. But I've already had some fruit.

3. But I've already had some tea.

4. But I've already had some apples.

5. But I've already had lunch.

6. But I've already had a cup of coffee.

7. But I've already had some roast beef.

8. But I've already had a drink.

9. But I've already had a swim.

10. But I've already had some whisky.

Lesson 85

I. 1. do 2. do 3. do 4. done 5. did
6. done, done 7. Did 8. Do, do 9. done, did

II. 2. Yes, of course. He's been to a meeting, but he's here now.
3. Yes, of course. She's been to the restaurant, but she's here now.
4. Yes, of course. She's been to school, but she's here now.
5. Yes, of course. He's been to the hospital, but he's here now.
6. Yes, of course. She's been to the shops, but she's here now.
7. Yes, of course. He's been to the library, but he's here now.
8. Yes, of course. He's been to the dentist's, but he's here now.

III. 1. b. Has she ever been to Greece?/When did she go there?
c. Have they ever been to Norway?/When did they go there?
d. Has he ever been to Thailand?/When did he go there?
e. Have you ever been to Japan?/When did you go there?
f. Have you ever been to the Great Wall?/When did you go there?
2. b. No, I have never been there.
c. No, he has never been there.

d. No, they have never been there.

e. No, she has never been there.

f. No, he has never been there.

Lesson 86

I. 2. He's already done his homework, but he hasn't done the housework.

3. They've already painted the doors, but they haven't painted the windows.

4. She's already typed the letter, but she hasn't posted it.

5. I've already dusted the table, but I haven't dusted the chairs.

6. She's already telephoned Jane, but she hasn't telephoned Jack.

7. I've already been to London, but I haven't been to Paris.

8. I've already aired the room, but I haven't cleaned the floor.

II. 2. Yes, Tom's just opened it.

3. Yes, Mum's just cleaned it.

4. Yes, Mary's just turned it on.

5. Yes, Emma's just dried them.

6. Yes, Dad's just turned them off.

7. Yes, I've just put them there/on the shelf.

8. Yes, Jane's just washed them.

9. Yes, Sam has just emptied it.

10. Yes, I've just put them there/in the cupboard.

Lesson 87

I. 1. washed, washed 2. saw, seen 3. greeted, greeted

4. bought, bought 5. ate, eaten 6. swept, swept
7. did, done 8. met, met 9. finished, finished
10. made, made

II. 2. Has he made it yet?
No, he hasn't. He's still making it.
3. Have you washed them yet?
No, I haven't. I'm still washing them.
4. Has he painted them yet?
No, he hasn't. He's still painting them.
5. Have they had it yet?
No, they haven't. They're still having it.
6. Have you repaired it yet?
No, I haven't. I'm still repairing it.
7. Has she cooked it yet?
No, she hasn't. She's still cooking it.
8. Have you repaired it yet?
No, I haven't. I'm still repairing it.
9. Has he eaten it yet?
No, he hasn't. He's still eating it.
10. Has she cleaned them yet?
No, she hasn't. She's still cleaning them.
11. Have they looked at them yet?
No, they haven't. They're still looking at them.
12. Has he read it yet?
No, he hasn't. He's still reading it.

III. 2. The boys have already stopped, but the girls are still playing.
3. Ann has already stopped, but Peter is still reading.
4. The men have already stopped, but the women are still

talking.

5. Jane has already stopped, but Jill is still listening (to the stereo).
6. Helen has already stopped, but Dave is still running.

IV. 2. Have you seen the cat?/I saw it a minute ago.
3. Have they eaten the chicken?/They ate it yesterday evening.
4. Has she done the housework?/She did it at about four o'clock.
5. Has he had a cigarette?/He had one two minutes ago.
6. Have they found their books?/They found them half an hour ago.
7. Have they had a party?/They had one last Friday evening.
8. Has she been to the baker's?/She went there at nine this morning.
9. Have you met your new neighbours?/I met them yesterday morning.
10. Has Sophie driven a Toyota?/She drove one a year ago.

Lesson 88

I. 2. Yes, of course. Now I've opened it.
3. Yes, of course. Now I've swept it.
4. Yes, of course. Now I've cleaned it.
5. Yes, of course. Now I've dusted it.
6. Yes, of course. Now I've sharpened them.
7. Yes, of course. Now I've washed them.
8. Yes, of course. Now I've made it.
9. Yes, of course. Now I've typed it.

10. Yes, of course. Now I've given them to her.

II. 2. I've had beef, but I haven't had potatoes yet.
3. She's bought envelopes, but she hasn't bought stamps yet.
4. He's found the keys, but he hasn't found the money yet.
5. They've sold their house, but they haven't sold their car yet.
6. It's had its fish, but it hasn't had its milk yet.
7. I've had the medicine for my cold, but I haven't had the medicine for my headache yet.
8. He's put on his suit, but he hasn't put on his tie yet.
9. They've turned off the television, but they haven't turned off the stereo yet.
10. She's typed a letter to her parents, but she hasn't typed one to her teacher yet.

Lesson 89

I. 1. came, come 2. put, put 3. gave, given
4. shut, shut 5. spoke, spoken 6. went, gone
7. swam, swum 8. took, taken 9. read, read
10. wrote, written

II. 1. for 2. since 3. for 4. since 5. for 6. since
7. for 8. for 9. for 10. since

III. 1. b. They have been in the building for ten minutes.
c. My sister has been in Paris for two years.
d. Those women have been in the shop for four hours.
e. The boys have been on the beach for six hours.
f. He has been in Korea for three months.
g. I have been in England for a week.
h. She has been in the library for two hours.
i. He has been in the teacher's office for half an hour.

j. She has been at the doctor's for thirty minutes.

2. b. They have been in the building since five o'clock.

c. My sister has been in Paris since 2000.

d. Those women have been in the shop since ten o'clock.

e. The boys have been on the beach since early this morning.

f. He has been in Korea since April.

g. I have been in England since last week.

h. She has been in the library since three o'clock.

i. He has been in the teacher's office since two o'clock.

j. She has been at the doctor's since eight thirty this morning.

Lesson 90

I. 1. Have ... read, read 2. has just taken

3. am reading, haven't finished

4. rained 5. has travelled, lived

6. met, haven't met 7. left

8. were, did ... buy 9. had, haven't had

10. have ... worked, have worked

II. 1. I have lived in Greece since 1976.

2. Did you have good weather last weekend?

3. He took his medicine an hour ago.

4. I saw Sam and Tim yesterday.

5. I've already waited for half an hour.

6. We have had this house since 1998.

7. Who gave you that lovely hat?

8. That's a nice picture. Did you paint it yourself?

9. We've had our new car for four days.
10. I fell down a minute ago.

Lesson 91

I. 1. The bus will take you to your school.
2. He will do his homework tomorrow.
3. We will/shall have a meeting next Wednesday.
4. It will rain today.
5. We will/shall have another English lesson tomorrow afternoon.
6. Susan will move into her new house the day after tomorrow.
7. They will enjoy themselves on their holiday next month.
8. You will meet them tomorrow evening.
9. I will/shall go back home next weekend.
10. We will/shall have a big party tomorrow night.

II. 2. I've lost my umbrella. /I'll buy you a new one.
3. They've lost their way. /The policeman will help them.
4. I've had a bad stomachache for two days. /We'll take you to the doctor's.
5. She hasn't got up yet. /She'll get up soon.
6. My son's lost his book. /I'll buy him a new one.
7. We haven't finished our homework yet. /You'll do it tomorrow.
8. She's lost her pen. /I'll lend her a pencil.

Lesson 92

I. 2. Yes, they'll have a party on Saturday night.
3. Yes, he'll go to Shanghai on business next week.
4. Yes, I'll/we'll paint our table and chairs soon.

5. Yes, he'll have a haircut at the weekend.
6. Yes, she'll have a holiday next year.
7. Yes, they'll visit us soon.
8. Yes, I'll/we'll telephone her on Sunday.
9. Yes, it'll snow next month.
10. Yes, they'll move to a new house in July.

II. 1. b. Yes, I/we will. c. Yes, they will.
d. Yes, he will. e. Yes, I/we will.
f. Yes, she will. g. Yes, they will.
h. Yes, I/we will.

2. b. No, they won't. c. No, I/we won't.
d. No, he won't. e. No, she won't.
f. No, they won't. g. No, it won't.
h. No, it won't.

Lesson 93

I. 2. Will she clean the kitchen tomorrow morning?
No, she won't. She cleaned the kitchen yesterday morning.
3. Will they go to London next month?
No, they won't. They went to London last month.
4. Will he visit Seoul next May?
No, he won't. He visited Seoul last May.
5. Will you play football tomorrow afternoon?
No, I/we won't. I/We played football yesterday afternoon.
6. Will your son go to England next year?
No, he won't. He went to England last year.
7. Will they fly to Rome the month after next?

No, they won't. They flew to Rome the month before last.

8. Will she stay in Berlin next October?

No, she won't. She stayed in Berlin last October.

9. Will he work in Sydney next year?

No, he won't. He worked in Sydney last year.

10. Will you see the film tomorrow?

No, I won't. I saw the film yesterday.

II. 2. She will leave Madrid next month. /Her husband will go with her.

3. I shall go to the butcher's tomorrow morning. /My friend will go with me.

4. They will travel to New York next week. /I shall go with them.

5. I shall clean my room tomorrow. /My sister will help me.

6. He will pack his bags the day after tomorrow. /His wife will do it with him.

7. We shall go to the beach tomorrow evening. /Our children will go with us.

8. She will visit her sick uncle next Monday. /Her brother will go with her.

9. He will repair the car tomorrow afternoon. /His assistant will help him.

10. I shall fly to Tokyo the day after tomorrow. /My friend Nigel will go with me.

Lesson 94

I. 2. She will have a holiday.

3. They will fly to Beijing.
4. She will move into a new flat.
5. We shall travel to Stockholm.
6. I/We shall watch television.
7. They will go for a walk in the park.
8. They will have a party.
9. I/We shall stay at home and have a rest.
10. She will have a lesson.

II. 2. Will you buy me some envelopes tomorrow?
3. Shall I meet you next Thursday?
4. Will they go there next week?
5. Shall we have a party the day after tomorrow?
6. Shall we go for a walk tomorrow morning?
7. Shall I speak to him about it tomorrow?
8. Will he invite her to dinner tonight?
9. Will she buy a new radio next month?
10. Will they go to Berlin again next year?
11. Shall we climb up the hill tomorrow evening?
12. Will the children play in the park next Sunday?
13. Shall I buy some beef at the butcher's tomorrow?
14. Will you talk to them tomorrow morning?

Lesson 95

I. 2. He'd better have a cup of tea.
3. We'd better open the windows.
4. You'd better drink more water.
5. She'd better have a rest.
6. You'd better take it off.
7. We'd better go and see him tomorrow.

8. He'd better take an aspirin.
9. They'd better put on more clothes.
10. We'd better buy some.
11. We'd better stay at home tonight.

II. 2. I must have a meal.
3. You must keep quiet.
4. I must buy some.
5. We must call the doctor.
6. You must stay at home.
7. You must have a haircut.
8. We must clean it.
9. She must stay in bed.
10. You must do your homework.
11. He must have a rest.

III. 2. They've got plenty of money.
3. There are usually plenty of people in the park at weekends.
4. We can't leave now. We still have plenty of work to do.
5. You must drink plenty of water.
6. She must read plenty of books to pass the exam next year.
7. We still have plenty of time.
8. Plenty of Korean tourists will come here next month.
9. We still have plenty of milk in the refrigerator.
10. John has got plenty of ties.

Lesson 96

I. 2. I swept the floor an hour ago. /I shall cook dinner for my family in an hour's time.

3. She gave a lesson two hours ago. /She will go home in two hours' time.
4. They read some interesting books two weeks ago. /They will have a party in two weeks' time.
5. He flew to New York on business a month ago. /He will go to London for a meeting in a month's time.
6. They sold their old car six months ago. /They will buy a new car in six months' time.
7. He drove to work fifteen minutes ago. /He will type a letter in fifteen minutes' time.
8. I spoke to my boss about my job three months ago. /I will look for a new job in three months' time.

II. 2. It's two minutes to eight. /He will start work in two minutes' time.
3. It's a quarter to ten. /We will finish our lesson in five minutes' time.
4. It's half past eleven. /I/We will have lunch in half an hour's time.
5. It's three minutes past two. /The bus will be here in seven minutes' time.
6. It's twenty minutes past four. /The plane will take off in thirty-five minutes' time.
7. It's twenty-two minutes past eight. /The meeting will start in eight minutes' time.
8. It's four minutes to seven. /The News will begin on CCTV in four minutes' time.

Lesson 97

I. 2. They're theirs. 3. It's his. 4. It's hers.

5. They're theirs. 6. It's ours. 7. They're yours.
8. They're theirs. 9. It's mine. 10. It's his.
11. It's ours. 12. They're yours.

II. 1. my, yours 2. his, hers 3. our, yours
4. their, ours 5. my, yours 6. my, hers
7. my, theirs 8. His 9. my
10. her, his

III. 1. b. This hat is his. It belongs to him.
c. This coat is hers. It belongs to her.
d. This coat is his. It belongs to him.
e. This bag is mine. It belongs to me.
f. This house is hers. It belongs to her.
g. This writing paper is yours. It belongs to you.
h. This wine is mine. It belongs to me.
2. b. This book is yours. It belongs to you.
c. This office is theirs. It belongs to them.
d. This cat is theirs. It belongs to them.
e. This boat is theirs. It belongs to them.
f. This room is theirs. It belongs to them.
g. This car is ours. It belongs to us.
h. This key is ours. It belongs to us.
3. b. These handbags are theirs. They belong to them.
c. These toys are theirs. They belong to them.
d. These letters are ours. They belong to us.
e. These watches are yours. They belong to you.
f. These bags are theirs. They belong to them.
g. These newspapers are ours. They belong to us.
h. These envelopes are yours. They belong to you.

Lesson 98

I. 1. b. No, it isn't his. It's mine.
c. No, it isn't yours. It's hers.
d. No, it isn't theirs. It's ours.
e. No, it isn't ours/yours. It's his.
f. No, it isn't his. It's theirs.
g. No, it isn't hers. It's his.
h. No, it isn't yours. It's his.

2. b. No, they aren't ours/yours. They're his.
c. No, they aren't hers. They're theirs.
d. No, they aren't mine. They're his.
e. No, they aren't ours/yours. They're theirs.
f. No, they aren't hers. They're his.
g. No, they aren't ours/yours. They're theirs.
h. No, they aren't his. They're hers.

II. 2. They aren't mine. They're theirs.
3. It isn't his. It's mine.
4. They aren't yours. They're ours.
5. It isn't hers. It's mine.
6. It isn't his. It's yours.
7. It isn't theirs. It's yours.
8. They aren't mine. They're his.

Lesson 99

I. 2. She says that she feels ill.
3. He thinks that he needs a haircut.
4. I'm sure that it's going to snow tomorrow.
5. The doctor says that you must stay in bed for three days.
6. I'm sorry that he's got a bad cold.

7. He believes that he can repair the car.
8. She understands that I'm very tired and thirsty.
9. He says that he usually gets up at seven.
10. I know that Mr. Smith has just sold his house.

II. 2. He fell downstairs. He thinks that he's hurt his left leg.
3. They've got mumps. They're afraid that they can't go to school next week.
4. I've got a headache. I believe that I've got flu.
5. He had a car crash yesterday. He knows that he must take it to a garage.
6. I shaved this morning and cut myself. I think that I must be careful next time.
7. She has a toothache. She thinks that she must see the dentist.
8. I fell off my bike and hurt my back. I think that I need an X-ray.

III. 2. The children say that they have already finished their homework.
3. He believes that they will arrive in an hour's time.
4. I am afraid that it will rain tomorrow.
5. The doctor is sure that he has got measles.
6. The mother knows that her baby wants some milk.
7. The teacher thinks that the students are studying hard.
8. I am sorry that I am/will be late today.
9. We understand that you need plenty of money.
10. John says that he can drive.

Lesson 100

I. 2. I say that I feel cold.

3. They say that they will fly to London next Tuesday.
4. She says that she is going to have an X-ray tomorrow.
5. The teacher says that my/our son is working very well.
6. We say that we don't need any sugar.
7. He says that he has already got a driver's licence.
8. They say that it isn't very hot in their city in summer.
9. She says that she must catch the ten fifteen train.
10. The doctor says that I'd/you'd better stay at home for two days.

II. 2. The boys say that they want an ice cream.
3. Mary says that she's just emptied the basket.
4. Tom says that he's never been to Sydney.
5. The postmen say that they're going to have a holiday tomorrow.
6. My daughter says that she needs a watch.
7. Mrs. Scott says that there isn't much cheese in the refrigerator.
8. The weatherman says that it will be very hot tomorrow.
9. My friends say that they've enjoyed themselves very much.
10. The mechanic says that he can't repair the car.

Lesson 101

I. 2. She says she's staying in Rome.
3. I'm sure they enjoyed their holiday in Greece.
4. I'm afraid it's going to be windy tomorrow.
5. The doctor says you must stay at home for a week.
6. I'm sorry he hasn't got better.
7. He believes he can finish it in ten minutes.

8. She hopes she'll go to university next year.
9. He says he usually goes to work by bus.
10. I know they need a large house.

II. 2. He says he's hurt his leg, and (he) will have an X-ray tomorrow.
3. They say they've got mumps, and they're afraid they can't go to school next week.
4. She says she's got a headache, and she believes she's got flu.
5. He says he's just had a car crash, and he knows he must drive carefully.
6. He says I'd/we'd better go back to the station now, and he's sure the train will leave soon.
7. She says she can't read her boss's letter, and she's sorry she hasn't typed it yet.
8. They say they've already worked for two hours, and they think they need some coffee.
9. He says he's late for the meeting, and he's sorry his watch is five minutes slow.
10. She says she's never been to Paris, but she hopes she'll go there next year.

Lesson 102

I. 1. don't understand 2. knows 3. speak
4. are 5. is going 6. say
7. won't be 8. is going to have
9. are waiting 10. doesn't want

II. 2. The boys say they're tired and sleepy.
3. Mary says she's just washed the dishes.

4. Tom says he's afraid he can't hear you/me.
5. My daughter says she'll write a letter to you/me soon.
6. My husband says he'll take the children to school.
7. Lucy says she's still cooking the evening meal.
8. The postman says he thinks he needs a big bag for the letters.
9. My friends say they've already arrived in Shanghai.
10. Peter says he feels ill.

III. 2. are they? 3. will he? 4. is it? 5. do we?
6. does she? 7. does he? 8. are you? 9. have we?
10. has she? 11. is he? 12. has she?

Lesson 103

I. 2. I could play football, but I couldn't play tennis.
3. She could swim, but she couldn't dance.
4. He could ride a bike, but he couldn't drive a car.
5. I could speak English, but I couldn't speak French.
6. I could wash clothes, but I couldn't cook dishes.
7. He could do his homework, but he couldn't do his sister's.
8. I could buy a car, but I couldn't buy a house.

II. 2. I could swim five miles last year, too.
3. He could answer all the questions yesterday, too.
4. She could drive well two years ago, too.
5. I could write English well at school, too.
6. He could repair a car five years ago, too.
7. She could play the piano at the age of eight, too.
8. He could tell the exact time at the age of six, too.

III. 1. b. No, it was too hot to drink.

c. No, it was too expensive to buy.

d. No, it was too difficult to answer.

e. No, it was too bitter to take.

f. No, it was too heavy to lift.

g. No, it was too stale to eat.

h. No, it was too long to read.

2. b. No, it's too heavy for them to lift.

c. No, it's too long for me/us to remember.

d. No, it's too expensive for her to buy.

e. No, it's too small for him to see.

f. No, it's too heavy for them to move.

g. No, it's too hot for me/us to drink.

h. No, it's too difficult for them to do.

IV. 2. She wasn't tall enough to clean the blackboard.

3. He wasn't strong enough to carry the case.

4. She wasn't lucky enough to win the prize.

5. He wasn't big enough to ride a bike.

6. I wasn't/We weren't tired enough to go to sleep.

7. They weren't clever enough to pass the test.

8. She wasn't tall enough to open the windows.

9. I wasn't/We weren't well enough to go to work.

10. I wasn't/We weren't rich enough to buy a new car.

Lesson 104

I. 1. b. The man was too old to swim in the sea.

c. She was too ill to go to work yesterday.

d. The little dog was too weak to walk.

e. The news was too good to be true.

f. The boys were too tired to climb the wall.

g. We were too late to catch the train.

h. I was too stupid to understand the maths problem.

2. b. The food was too hot for them to eat.

c. The trousers were too short for him to wear.

d. Her handwriting was too bad for us to read.

e. The work was too hard for them to do.

f. The shelf was too high for me to reach.

g. The questions were too difficult for them to answer.

h. The bag was too big for her to carry.

II. 1. b. The table is small enough for them to move.

c. The boxes are light enough for him to lift.

d. The questions are easy enough for them to understand.

e. The stereo is loud enough for them to hear.

f. The pear is soft enough for the old woman to eat.

g. The juice is sweet enough for you to drink.

h. The wall is low enough for him to climb.

2. b. I'm tired enough to sleep for twenty-four hours.

c. He's thirsty enough to drink four glasses of water.

d. I'm hungry enough to eat five cakes.

e. He's big enough to ride a bike.

f. He's rich enough to buy the house.

g. She's lucky enough to win the prize.

h. He's strong enough to move the bookcase.

Lesson 105

I. 3. I want him to put away the magazines.

4. She wants me to shut all the windows.

5. Tell them to take out their pens and pencils.

6. He wants me to give him the newspaper.
7. Tell them to open their books.
8. Tell him to stay there.
9. Tell her to bring it to me.
10. She wants you to be careful.
11. I want you to read it to me.
12. Tell them to stand up.
13. She wants him to have a drink.
14. Tell him to work hard.
15. He wants you to turn on the lights.
16. Tell him to turn off the cooker.

II. 3. Tell him not to be lazy.
4. Tell her not to forget the telephone number.
5. He doesn't want you to be late.
6. He doesn't want us to wait for him.
7. She doesn't want him to open the window.
8. She doesn't want you to break the vase.
9. Tell him not to drive too fast.
10. Tell them not to lose the money.
11. Tell her not to hurt herself.
12. He doesn't want them to miss their train.
13. Tell him not to cut himself.
14. He doesn't want you to use a pencil.
15. Tell them not to fall.
16. She doesn't want him to paint the door yellow.

Lesson 106

I. 2. I want them to walk on the pavement. I don't want them to walk on the road.

3. I want you to write your answers on the answer sheet. I don't want you to write your answers on the test paper.
4. I want him to do his homework at home. I don't want him to do it at school.
5. I want him to paint it blue. I don't want him to paint it red.
6. I want her to write her name at the top of the paper. I don't want her to write her name at the bottom of the paper.
7. I want you to speak English. I don't want you to speak Chinese.
8. I want him to drive slowly. I don't want him to drive quickly.
9. I want her to use a pen. I don't want her to use a pencil.
10. I want her to come home early. I don't want her to come home late.

II. 2. Tell them to spell the words correctly. Tell them not to spell them wrongly.
3. Tell her to be careful. Tell her not to fall off the chair.
4. Tell him to keep the book clean. Tell him not to make it dirty.
5. Tell them to use a black pen. Tell them not to use a blue pen.
6. Tell her to put the vase on the table. Tell her not to put it on the floor.
7. Tell her to stay in the room. Tell her not to leave the room.
8. Tell him to remember his umbrella. Tell him not to leave it in the restaurant.

9. Tell him to walk slowly. Tell him not to fall down.

10. Tell them to come to school early. Tell them not to be late.

Lesson 107

I. 1. hotter, hottest
2. heavier, heaviest
3. larger, largest
4. bigger, biggest
5. thinner, thinnest
6. newer, newest
7. nicer, nicest
8. easier, easiest
9. lazier, laziest
10. taller, tallest

II. 3. Yes, he is fatter than his wife.

4. Yes, she is prettier than her sister.

5. Yes, this question is easier than that one.

6. Yes, those baskets are fuller than these.

7. Yes, this picture is nicer than that one.

8. Yes, this road is wider than that one.

9. Yes, her sister's dress is smarter than hers.

10. Yes, these apples are bigger than those.

11. Yes, those people are lazier than these.

12. Yes, it's hotter today than it was yesterday.

13. Yes, the days in winter are shorter than the days in autumn.

14. Yes, those knives are sharper than these.

III. 2. Yes, but this one is the easiest. It's the easiest of all the questions.

3. Yes, but this one is the newest. It's the newest of all the books.

4. Yes, but this one is the shortest. It's the shortest of all the pencils.

5. Yes, but this one is the nicest. It's the nicest of all the pictures.
6. Yes, but this one is the strongest. He's the strongest of all the policemen.
7. Yes, but this one is the sweetest. It's the sweetest of all the oranges.
8. Yes, but this one is the cleverest. He's/She's the cleverest of all the children.

Lesson 108

I. 2. The men are happy, the women are happier, and the children are the happiest of all the people.
3. Sam's suitcase is heavy, Ann's suitcase is heavier, and Jack's (suitcase) is the heaviest of all the suitcases.
4. Jane is tall, David is taller, and Tony is the tallest in the class.
5. My shoes are small, your shoes are smaller, and her shoes are the smallest of all the shoes.
6. The dress is cheap, the shoes are cheaper, and the hat is the cheapest in the shop.
7. This watch is nice, that watch is nicer, and the blue watch is the nicest I've ever seen.
8. The white bird is big, the black bird is bigger, and the black and white bird is the biggest I've ever seen.
9. The Summer Palace is great, the Imperial Palace is greater, and the Great Wall is the greatest I've ever seen.
10. This carpet is lovely, that carpet is lovelier, and the carpet in the living room is the loveliest in the house.

II. 2. Those apples are big, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are bigger.

3. Those tomatoes are fresh, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are fresher.

4. Those peaches are nice, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are nicer.

5. Those dresses are smart, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are smarter.

6. Those eggs are large, aren't they?

Yes, they are, but these are larger.

Lesson 109

I. 1. better, best
2. more, most
3. dirtier, dirtiest
4. cleaner, cleanest
5. fewer, fewest
6. slower, slowest
7. worse, worst
8. lighter, lightest
9. less, least
10. smaller, smallest

II. 1. b. Yes, please. I'd like some fruit. I've got very little. No, thank you. I don't want any soup. I still have a little.

c. Yes, please. I'd like some ink. I've got very little. No, thank you. I don't want any glue. I still have a little.

d. Yes, please. I'd like some tea. I've got very little. No, thank you. I don't want any sugar. I still have a little.

e. Yes, please. I'd like some jam. I've got very little. No, thank you. I don't want any honey. I still have a little.

2. b. Yes, please. I'd like some eggs. I've got very few.

No, thank you. I don't want any apples. I still have a few.

c. Yes, please. I'd like some flowers. I've got very few.
No, thank you. I don't want any vegetables. I still have a few.

d. Yes, please. I'd like some pens. I've got very few.
No, thank you. I don't want any pencils. I still have a few.

e. Yes, please. I'd like some potatoes. I've got very few.
No, thank you. I don't want any lettuces. I still have a few.

III. 1. a few 2. few 3. little, a little 4. few
5. a few 6. a little 7. a little 8. few
9. A few 10. little 11. a few 12. a little
13. a few 14. a little

IV. 2. I made very few mistakes.
You're right. But John made fewer mistakes. And Jane made the fewest mistakes of all.

3. That restaurant is very bad.
You're right. But the Small Café is worse. And the Sun Restaurant is the worst of all.

4. She earns very little money.
You're right. But he earns less money. And his brother earns the least of all.

5. I have a lot of friends.
You're right. But Jenny has more friends. And Robert has the most of all.

6. Charlotte makes good coffee.

You're right. But my sister makes better coffee. And my mother makes the best (coffee) of all.

Lesson 110

I. 2. Jane has bought more skirts than Ann has, but she has bought fewer skirts than Mary has.
Mary has bought the most skirts of the three, and Ann has bought the fewest.

3. Jane has got more handbags than Mary has, but she has got fewer handbags than Ann has.
Ann has got the most handbags of the three, and Mary has got the fewest.

4. Ann has more dollars than Jane has, but she has fewer dollars than Mary has.
Mary has the most dollars of the three, and Jane has the fewest.

5. Mary had more bars of chocolate than Ann did, but she had fewer bars of chocolate than Jane did.
Jane had the most bars of chocolate of the three, and Ann had the fewest.

6. Jane ate more slices of bread than Mary did, but she ate fewer slices of bread than Ann did.
Ann ate the most slices of bread of the three, and Mary ate the fewest.

7. Ann drank more bottles of beer than Jane did, but she drank fewer bottles of beer than Mary did.
Mary drank the most bottles of beer of the three, and Jane drank the fewest.

8. Mary has written more letters than Jane has, but she has

written fewer letters than Ann has.

Ann has written the most letters of the three, and Jane has written the fewest.

9. Mary had more pieces of steak than Jane did, but she had fewer pieces of steak than Ann did.

Ann had the most pieces of steak of the three, and Jane had the fewest.

10. Ann made more mistakes than Jane did, but she made fewer mistakes than Mary did.

Mary made the most mistakes of the three, and Jane made the fewest.

II. 2. Sam is the best at Science in this class.

3. Ken is the worst at Science in this class.

4. Hans and Ken are worse at Science than Tim.

5. Tim and Sam are better at English than Bob.

6. David, Hans and Ken are worse at English than Sophie.

7. Hans is the worst at English in this class.

8. Tim is the best at English in this class.

9. Sophie, Ken, Bob and Kathy are better at Chinese than Sam.

10. David and Hans are worse at Chinese than Tim.

11. David is the worst at Chinese in this class.

12. Kathy is the best at Chinese in this class.

Lesson 111

I. 1. older 2. warmer 3. warmest

4. most expensive 5. faster, faster, fastest

6. worst 7. worse, worst 8. better

II. 2. That girl is more beautiful than this girl.

This girl is less beautiful than that girl.

3. This armchair is more comfortable than that one.
   That armchair is less comfortable than this one.
4. The boy is more careless than the girl.
   The girl is less careless than the boy.
5. The second question is more difficult than the first one.
   The first question is less difficult than the second one.
6. My daughter is more hard-working than my son.
   My son is less hard-working than my daughter.
7. This dress is more expensive than that one.
   That dress is less expensive than this one.
8. That driver is more careful than this driver.
   This driver is less careful than that driver.

III. 3. Your book is the most interesting I've ever read, and his book is the least interesting.
4. This engineer is the most hard-working I've ever met, and that engineer is the least hard-working.
5. This hairdresser is the most careful of all, and that hairdresser is the least careful.
6. The red car is the most expensive I've ever seen, and the black car is the least expensive.
7. The French paper is the most difficult of all, and the Maths paper is the least difficult.
8. This man is the most important of all, and that man is the least important.

IV. 2. This watch is more expensive than that watch.
   This watch is not as cheap as that watch.
3. His handwriting is worse than her handwriting.
   His handwriting is not as good as her handwriting.

4. A boat is slower than a car.
   A boat is not as fast as a car.
5. A cigar is bigger than a cigarette.
   A cigar is not as small as a cigarette.
6. This book is thinner than that book.
   This book is not as thick as that book.
7. This question is more difficult than that question.
   This question is not as easy as that question.

Lesson 112

I. 2. William and Scott are not as old as Jim.
3. Mary is not as old as Carol.
4. William is not as old as Scott.
5. William is not as old as Mary.
6. Scott is as old as Jill.
7. Mary, Marie, Carol and Jill are not as old as Sophie.
8. Jim is as old as Sophie.

II. 1. William
2. Marie, Scott or Jim
3. as heavy as Marie, Carol, Jill, Scott or Jim
4. heavy as Carol
5. as heavy as Jim
6. as heavy as Jim
7. heavy as Scott
8. as heavy as Marie, Carol, Jill, Scott or Jim
9. as heavy as Mary, Marie, Carol, William, Jill, Scott or Jim
10. as heavy as Marie, Scott or Jim

III. 3. as tall as Jim
4. not as tall as Jim
5. as tall as William
6. not as tall as Mary
7. not as tall as Jim
8. as tall as Jill
9. as tall as Marie
10. not as tall as Marie

注：答案不唯一，此处给出的仅为范例。

Lesson 113

I. 1. b. So can I.　　c. So did I.
　　d. So am I.　　e. So will I.
　　f. So am I.　　g. So have I.
　2. b. Neither can I.　　c. Neither do I.
　　d. Neither will I.　　e. Neither did I.
　　f. Neither could I.　　g. Neither have I.

II. 2. He is tall, and so are you.
　3. My shoes are dirty, and so are my trousers.
　4. This pencil is blunt, and so is that one.
　5. You must come to the party, and so must your husband.
　6. He went away, and so did his father.
　7. I like tomatoes, and so do my friends.
　8. She goes to school every day, and so does her sister.
　9. He sits in the front, and so does his brother.
　10. I will have a haircut, and so will my father.
　11. You have finished, and so have we.
　12. He is here, and so are his friends.

III. 2. I don't want to go, and she doesn't want to go, either.
　I don't want to go, and neither does she.
　3. They haven't done their homework, and he hasn't done his homework, either.
　They haven't done their homework, and neither has he.
　4. I didn't sleep well last night, and she didn't sleep well, either.
　I didn't sleep well last night, and neither did she.
　5. This shop doesn't sell fruit, and that one doesn't sell fruit, either.

This shop doesn't sell fruit, and neither does that one.

6. The cat won't drink tea, and the dog won't drink tea, either.

   The cat won't drink tea, and neither will the dog.

7. She hasn't seen him, and we haven't seen him, either.

   She hasn't seen him, and neither have we.

8. You aren't very old, and he isn't very old, either.

   You aren't very old, and neither is he.

9. Your town isn't very big, and mine isn't very big, either.

   Your town isn't very big, and neither is mine.

10. She hasn't got any ink, and I haven't got any ink, either.

    She hasn't got any ink, and neither have I.

IV. 2. ... didn't buy any. She bought no beef. She bought none.

3. ... doesn't want any. He wants no envelopes. He wants none.

4. ... hasn't got any. He/She has got no red ink. He/She has got none.

5. ... haven't got any. They've got no homework. They've got none.

6. ... doesn't need any. He needs no boxes. He needs none.

7. ... doesn't have any. It has no windows. It has none.

8. ... didn't buy any. I bought no new dresses. I bought none.

9. ... didn't eat any. He ate no pears. He ate none.

10. ... didn't have any. He had no small change. He had

none.

Lesson 114

I. 1. b. No, there aren't any flowers. There are no flowers. There are none.

c. No, there isn't any water. There is no water. There is none.

d. No, there isn't any butter. There is no butter. There is none.

e. No, there aren't any eggs. There are no eggs. There are none.

f. No, there isn't any paper. There is no paper. There is none.

g. No, there isn't any ink. There is no ink. There is none.

h. No, there aren't any matches. There are no matches. There are none.

2. b. No, they haven't bought any biscuits. They've bought no biscuits. They've bought none.

c. No, I haven't had any fruit. I've had no fruit. I've had none.

d. No, he hasn't got any tobacco. He's got no tobacco. He's got none.

e. No, I haven't got any vegetables. I've got no vegetables. I've got none.

f. No, she hasn't had any food. She's had no food. She's had none.

g. No, it hasn't eaten any bones. It's eaten no bones. It's eaten none.

h. No, we haven't bought any soap. We've bought no soap. We've bought none.

II. 2. I'm sorry. I've got no sweets. I've got none.
3. I'm sorry. I've got no writing paper. I've got none.
4. I'm sorry. I've got no water. I've got none.
5. I'm sorry. I've got no matches. I've got none.
6. I'm sorry. I've got no rice. I've got none.
7. I'm sorry. I've got no flowers. I've got none.
8. I'm sorry. I've got no chalk. I've got none.
9. I'm sorry. I've got no money. I've got none.
10. I'm sorry. I've got no magazines. I've got none.

Lesson 115

I. 1. b. I didn't say anything. I said nothing.
c. I didn't hear anything. I heard nothing.
d. I didn't write anything. I wrote nothing.
e. I didn't read anything. I read nothing.
f. I didn't drink anything. I drank nothing.
g. I didn't do anything. I did nothing.
h. I didn't eat anything. I ate nothing.
i. I didn't lose anything. I lost nothing.
j. I didn't buy anything. I bought nothing.
2. b. I didn't tell anybody. I told nobody.
c. I didn't hear anybody. I heard nobody.
d. I didn't ask anybody. I asked nobody.
e. I didn't meet anybody. I met nobody.
f. I didn't help anybody. I helped nobody.
g. I didn't find anybody. I found nobody.
h. I didn't telephone anybody. I telephoned nobody.

i. I didn't remember anybody. I remembered nobody.

j. I didn't write to anybody. I wrote to nobody.

3. c. Everything in the shop is cheap.

d. Nobody is lazy in the class. Everybody is hard-working.

e. Nobody is short in the family. Everybody is tall.

f. Everything in the bag is dirty.

g. Everything in the box is new.

h. Nobody is ill in the office. Everybody is very well.

i. Everything at the greengrocer's is fresh.

j. Nobody is unhappy at the party. Everybody is happy.

II. 3. Yes, there is. There is something in the water. /No, there isn't. There isn't anything in the water. There is nothing in the water.

4. Yes, there is. There is someone in the house. /No, there isn't. There isn't anyone in the house. There is no one in the house.

5. Yes, there is. There is something in the basket. /No, there isn't. There isn't anything in the basket. There is nothing in the basket.

6. Yes, there is. There is someone in the building. /No, there isn't. There isn't anyone in the building. There is no one in the building.

7. Yes, there is. There is something in the case. /No, there isn't. There isn't anything in the case. There is nothing in the case.

8. Yes, there is. There is someone in the library. /No, there isn't. There isn't anyone in the library. There is no one in the library.

9. Yes, there is. There is something in the bag. /No, there isn't. There isn't anything in the bag. There is nothing in the bag.

10. Yes, there is. There is someone in the kitchen. /No, there isn't. There isn't anyone in the kitchen. There is no one in the kitchen.

III. somewhere, everywhere, anywhere, anywhere/somewhere, somewhere, everywhere, anywhere, nowhere

Lesson 116

I. 1. something

2. anyone/anybody/someone/somebody, something, anything

3. nowhere
4. no one/nobody
5. anything
6. anywhere, somewhere
7. Everything
8. everywhere, something
9. everywhere
10. No one/Nobody
11. nowhere
12. nothing
13. someone/somebody/something
14. anything
15. something
16. somewhere

II. 4. There's nothing on the table.

5. There's nobody in the school.
6. There's no one in the car.
7. There's nothing in the room.
8. There's nobody in the building.
9. There's no one in the street.
10. There's nothing in the box.
11. There's nobody in the library.

12. There's no one in the classroom.

III. 2. I'm sorry. There isn't any left. /Yes, we have. There's none left.

3. I'm sorry. There aren't any left. /Yes, we have. There are none left.

4. I'm sorry. There isn't any left. /Yes, we have. There's none left.

5. I'm sorry. There aren't any left. /Yes, we have. There are none left.

6. I'm sorry. There isn't any left. /Yes, we have. There's none left.

Lesson 117

I. 2. While he was crossing the street two days ago, he slipped and fell down.

3. While I was having a bath last night, the telephone rang.

4. While she was having dinner yesterday evening, someone knocked at the door.

5. While she was cutting the meat this morning, she cut her finger.

7. Someone came to see me while we were watching television last night.

8. Tom fell asleep while he was sitting in his armchair.

9. The policeman saw an accident while he was walking down the street.

10. Someone turned on the stereo while we were reading in the library.

II. 2. When he was crossing the street two days ago, he slipped and fell down.

3. When I was having a bath last night, the telephone rang.
4. When she was having dinner yesterday evening, someone knocked at the door.
5. When she was cutting the meat this morning, she cut her finger.
6. The child hurt himself when he was climbing a tree.
7. Someone came to see me when we were watching television last night.
8. Tom fell asleep when he was sitting in his armchair.
9. The policeman saw an accident when he was walking down the street.
10. Someone turned on the stereo when we were reading in the library.

III. 2. Just as he was leaving the office, his assistant came in.
3. Just as I was walking out of the building, it began to rain.
4. Just as she was opening the door, someone came in.
5. Just as I was going to sleep, I heard a loud noise from the road.
6. Just as we were going upstairs, they came downstairs.
7. Just as he was leaning out of the window, something dropped on his head.
8. Just as he was lighting a cigarette, someone came and told him not to smoke.

Lesson 118

I. 1. was sitting, threw　　2. rang, was doing
3. left, were enjoying

4. didn't go, wasn't feeling/didn't feel
5. was beginning, ran, jumped
6. went, was drawing
7. broke, was playing
8. was talking, brought
9. came, was telephoning
10. was listening, knocked, didn't hear
11. ate
12. was still moving, jumped
13. were playing, was cooking
14. was raining, left, cleared
15. were walking, saw
16. didn't want, was studying, shut

Lesson 119

I. 2. Because I had already posted it.
3. Because I had already given it back to him.
4. Because I had already swept it.
5. Because I had already finished it.
6. Because I had already eaten it.
7. Because I had already washed them.
8. Because I had already telephoned her.

II. 1. b. . . . , he had his breakfast.
c. . . . , he left home and went to school.
d. . . . , the teacher came into the classroom.
e. . . . , the English lesson began.
f. . . . , the Maths lesson began.
g. . . . , Jimmy ate bread and drank coffee.
h. . . . , the Science lesson began.
i. . . . , the Chinese lesson began.
j. . . . , the morning session ended.
2. b. . . . , he had washed and dressed.

c. ..., he had had his breakfast.

d. ..., Jimmy had walked into the classroom.

e. ..., the teacher had come into the classroom.

f. ..., the English lesson had ended.

g. ..., the Maths lesson had ended.

h. ..., Jimmy had eaten bread and drunk coffee.

i. ..., the Science lesson had ended.

j. ..., the Chinese lesson had ended.

III. 2. When she had corrected the students' papers, she went to bed.

3. When I had cleaned my teeth, I had breakfast.

4. When the bus had stopped, Tom got on.

5. When they had sold their house, they went to a new town.

6. When they had taken their exams, they had a big party.

7. When the rain had stopped, they all went out.

8. When she had read the letter, she told us the news.

9. When Mary had bought a ticket, she waited for the train.

10. When she had finished her work, she went out for dinner.

Lesson 120

I. 2. When Bob reached school, the class had already started.

3. When I got back home, they had already had dinner.

4. When she opened her umbrella, the rain had already stopped.

5. When the policeman arrived, the thief had already run away.

6. When her husband went to help, Mrs. Smith had already finished cooking.
7. When I got to his home, they had already taken him to hospital.
8. When I got my licence, I had already had driving lessons for three weeks.

II. 1. had just reached
2. had just finished
3. had just left
4. had just opened
5. had just answered
6. had just sat
7. had just begun
8. had just put

III. 2. He had worked for twelve hours so he was tired. He had never been so tired before.
3. She had run for five miles so she was thirsty. She had never been so thirsty before.
4. He had cooked a meal for his family so he was proud of himself. He had never been so proud of himself before.
5. She had failed the exam so she was sad. She had never been so sad before.
6. He had passed the English test so he was excited. He had never been so excited before.

Lesson 121

I. 2. ... someone who/that looks after sick people
3. ... someone who/that makes clothes
4. ... someone who/that cooks food
5. ... someone who/that repairs machines
6. ... someone who/that sails on a ship
7. ... someone who/that makes things with wood
8. ... someone who/that works in a garden

II. 2. That is the assistant who(m)/that served me last week.
3. That is the mechanic who(m)/that repaired my car.
4. That is the house that/which we visited a month ago.
5. That is the dog that/which chased our cat on Saturday.
6. These are the magazines which/that I bought yesterday.
7. That is the car that/which my father wants to buy.
8. That is the thief who(m)/that the policeman caught last night.

III.

1. who/that	2. which/that	3. which/that
4. who/that	5. which/that	6. who/that
7. who(m)/that	8. who(m)/that	9. which/that
10. who(m)/that	11. which/that	12. who(m)/that
13. which/that	14. who(m)/that	15. who/that
16. which/that	17. which/that	18. which/that

Lesson 122

I. 2. The books which/that I bought were very expensive.
3. The trees which/that were big fell down./The trees which/that fell down were big.
4. The dresses which/that she wanted were too expensive./She wanted the dresses which/that were too expensive.
5. She wants a doll which/that walks and talks for her birthday./The doll which/that she wants for her birthday walks and talks.
6. I've lost the umbrella which/that I bought last week.
7. I passed the exams which/that were not very difficult./The exams which/that I passed were not very difficult.
8. This is the car which/that I've just bought.
9. The street which/that we are walking along is called Fifth

Avenue. /We are walking along the street which/that is called Fifth Avenue.

10. The store which/that is the biggest in this city is across the street. /The store which/that is across the street is the biggest in this city.

II. 2. The teacher who(m)/that we handed the papers to was standing at the front. /We handed the papers to the teacher who/that was standing at the front.

3. I'm looking for someone who/that has a mobile phone to sell.

4. The young man who(m)/that we just saw is a doctor.

5. The person who/that helped me was a stranger.

6. The man who(m)/that the police wanted had run away with a lot of money. /The police wanted the man who/that had run away with a lot of money.

7. At last I met the man who(m)/that I had heard so much about.

8. The policemen who/that are on traffic duty look very tired.

9. This is the girl who/that found your money.

10. They looked for the men who/that were selling tickets.

Lesson 123

I. 2. The chair he was sitting on broke.

3. Show me the book you got from the library.

4. The books you were looking for are on the top shelf.

5. The fruit I bought in that greengrocer's is fresh.

6. The knife he was using slipped and cut his hand.

7. The window the thief had climbed through was still open.

8. The furniture she was cleaning was very dusty.
9. The dress she put on was green.
10. The book he read last week was very interesting.

II. 3. The tourists who are from Japan have already left.
4. That is the lady I saw on television last night.
5. The man I helped was very old.
6. The man who is sitting in that car is my boss.
7. The person I met in Beijing knows my teacher.
8. The man you are looking for is coming towards us.
9. The man you helped came to thank you.
10. The man we want to see is going into that building.

Lesson 124

I. 2. The man opening the bank is Mr. Brown.
3. The car on the right belongs to Mike.
4. The hat the nurse is wearing is part of her uniform.
5. The babies you can see are only a few hours old.
6. The bus we are on will take us downtown.
7. What's the name of the town you live in?
8. He gave her the purse she had left in the taxi.
9. The people standing there saw the accident.
10. The hospital around the corner is the one we are going to.
11. Is this the coat you took off?
12. I'm afraid there is little I can do for you.
13. The music coming from that window is nice.

II. 2. I want a watch which/that I can use as a stop-watch.
3. This writing paper my father gave to me is very good.
4. She couldn't find her shopping bag which she had put all her books in.

5. The pen he was writing with was very expensive.
6. There were some people who/that didn't like the idea.
7. This is my brother who/that is going to Australia.
8. I don't know the full name of the person I'm writing to.
9. There's the boy who/that lost his book.
10. This is the kitten Jane found in the garden.

Lesson 125

I. 2. Yes, I have to see him today and I shall have to see him tomorrow, too.
3. Yes, you have to cook lunch today and you will have to cook lunch tomorrow, too.
4. Yes, he has to serve in the shop today and he will have to serve in the shop tomorrow, too.
5. Yes, I have to see him today and I shall have to see him tomorrow, too.
6. Yes, he has to wear it today and he will have to wear it tomorrow, too.
7. Yes, she has to help her today and she will have to help her tomorrow, too.
8. Yes, I have to water it today and I shall have to water it tomorrow, too.

II. 1. c. No, you don't have to water them today, but you had to water them yesterday.
d. No, I don't have to clean it today, but I had to clean it yesterday.
e. No, you don't have to clean them today, but you had to clean them yesterday.
f. No, he doesn't have to buy any today, but he had to buy some yesterday.

2. b. No, you don't, and you won't have to go to bed early tomorrow, either.

c. No, I don't, and I won't have to do my homework tomorrow, either.

d. No, she doesn't, and she won't have to wash any clothes tomorrow, either.

e. No, you don't, and you won't have to do the shopping tomorrow, either.

f. No, you don't, and you won't have to hand in your papers tomorrow, either.

III. 2. You must wash your hands but you don't need to wash your face.

3. You must close the door but you don't need to close the windows.

4. He must wear a shirt but he doesn't need to wear a tie.

5. You must go to school today but you don't need to go tomorrow.

6. You must read the book but you don't need to answer the questions.

7. You must clean your teeth but you don't need to wash your hair.

8. I must cook vegetables for supper but I don't need to cook fish.

9. She must look after the baby but she doesn't need to look after the cat.

10. You must put on your coat but you don't need to put on your hat.

Lesson 126

I. 1. didn't need to 2. have to 3. don't need to
4. didn't need to 5. don't need to 6. didn't need to
7. don't need to 8. have to 9. don't need to
10. don't need to 11. didn't need to
12. don't need to

II. 2. I must sweep the floor now because I'm on duty today.
No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.
Then I shall have to sweep it tomorrow.
No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll sweep it for you.

3. I must clean the desks and chairs now because I'm on duty today.
No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.
Then I shall have to clean them tomorrow.
No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll clean them for you.

4. I must clean the windows now because I'm on duty today.
No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.
Then I shall have to clean them tomorrow.
No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll clean them for you.

5. I must collect the books now because I'm on duty today.
No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.
Then I shall have to collect them tomorrow.
No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll collect them for you.

6. I must water the flowers now because I'm on duty

today.

No, you don't need to do it because I'll do it for you.

Then I shall have to water them tomorrow.

No, you won't have to do it then, either, because I'll water them for you.

Lesson 127

I. 2. It can't be cold outside.

3. You can't be right.

4. She can't be sixty years old.

5. The book can't cost two hundred pounds.

6. It can't be eleven thirty.

7. He can't be so careless.

8. She can't be our new teacher.

9. He can't be fifty.

10. He can't be ill.

11. They can't be farmers.

12. It can't be so hot there.

II. 2. He must be an actor.

3. She must be twenty years old.

4. He must be a careful man.

5. There must be some water in the kettle.

6. They must have enough money for it.

7. The pen must be worth only ten *yuan*.

8. You must be very clever.

9. They must be businessmen.

10. It must be about six o'clock.

11. He must be very intelligent.

12. You must be very tired.

III. 4. You can speak French well.
5. He must be having a bath now.
6. She must clean the house every day.
7. She can't be fifty!
8. They must be students.
9. I must read this book.
10. He can't be watching television.
11. They must be on their way home.
12. That man can run very fast.
13. That house can't be very expensive.
14. It must be July 23rd today.
15. She can't be very rich.
16. They must be having a lesson now.
17. The girl can write very well.
18. You must correct all their mistakes.
19. Your son must be a clever boy.
20. She can't be at home.

Lesson 128

I. 1. can't, must 2. can't, must 3. must
4. must 5. can't, must 6. can't, must
7. can't, must 8. must 9. can't, must
10. must

II. 2. No, it can't be Jack. It must be Mike.
3. No, he can't be a lawyer. He must be an artist.
4. No, she can't live near the school. She must live a long way from the school.
5. No, she can't be at home. She must be at the office.
6. No, they can't be working. They must be playing.

7. No, it can't be two o'clock. It must be three o'clock.
8. No, it can't be the red one. It must be the yellow one.
9. No, it can't be December. It must be August.
10. No, he can't be fourteen. He must be eighteen.

Lesson 129

I. 2. You must have had a good time yesterday. You . . .
3. . . . a rest. They must have been very tired.
4. You can't have done all that by yourself. It . . .
5. . . . unpleasant. It must have been bad.
6. He can't have been there because . . .
7. You can't have passed the exam. You . . .
8. It can't have rained last night. The ground . . .
9. . . . restaurant. You must have left your case there.
10. You must have eaten my biscuits. Why . . .

II. 2. Yes, you'd better have a bath.
3. Yes, he'd better have a haircut.
4. Yes, we'd better get something to eat.
5. Yes, you'd better do your homework.
6. Yes, she'd better go and see a doctor.
7. Yes, you'd better telephone the teacher.
8. Yes, he'd better take his son to school.
9. Yes, you'd better do some shopping.
10. Yes, she'd better water the flowers.

III. 3. He'd better take an aspirin.
4. You'd better not stay up late.
5. You'd better not go out.
6. You'd better take a taxi.
7. She'd better open the windows.

8. We'd better stay in.
9. You'd better not turn on the stereo.
10. She'd better not eat too much.
11. You'd better ask your teacher.
12. He'd better not drink anything.

Lesson 130

I. 2. You can't have tried very hard.
3. You can't have been at the office on Sunday.
4. He can't have been ill yesterday.
5. You can't have seen me.
6. There can't have been many people there.
7. It can't have been so cold in your city last winter.
8. You can't have telephoned me.
9. She can't have made the dress.
10. You can't have failed the Maths test.
11. She can't have been so lucky.
12. He can't have sold his car.

II. 2. He must have passed all the exams.
3. She must have met him at the party.
4. The shop must have been full of people.
5. He must have made a lot of money.
6. They must have heard about it.
7. He must have gone to Shanghai yesterday.
8. They must have been walking in the park.
9. That car must have been cheap.
10. He must have been sleeping.
11. The day must have been May 5th.
12. He must have been a policeman at the time.

Lesson 131

I. 1. may come 2. may have passed 3. may be
4. may be 5. may have missed 6. may have been
7. may have had 8. may travel 9. may have found
10. may be

II. 2. It may rain tomorrow or it may not. I'm not sure.
3. She may be busy or she may not. I'm not sure.
4. There may be a meeting next week or there may not. I'm not sure.
5. She may go to university this year or she may not. I'm not sure.
6. It may be fine tomorrow or it may not. I'm not sure.
7. They may be having their lunch now or they may not. I'm not sure.
8. He may be in the office or he may not. I'm not sure.
9. We may be going by train or we may not. I'm not sure.
10. There may be a holiday on Friday or there may not. I'm not sure.

III. 2. He may have seen a famous actress. I'm not sure.
3. He may have been reading in the library. I'm not sure.
4. She may have been a policewoman three years ago. I'm not sure.
5. He may have borrowed the money from his father. I'm not sure.
6. It may have rained this time last year. I'm not sure.
7. He may have been ill. I'm not sure.
8. They may have found the lost case. I'm not sure.
9. Gary may have stayed at home. I'm not sure.
10. He may have bought the car. I'm not sure.

Lesson 132

I. 2. His cold may get worse.
3. It may fit.
4. It may help your headache.
5. She may not be at home.
6. It may get colder.
7. They may be on their way.
8. He may be busy.
9. He may know the answer.
10. They may be having a lesson in the next room.

II. 2. A thief may have broken in.
3. He may have caught flu.
4. That policeman may have seen you.
5. My mother may have prepared supper.
6. He may have lost his way.
7. He may have lost our number.
8. She may have gone there.
9. They may have had an accident.
10. He may have been in the garden.

Lesson 133

I. 2. . . . she was too young to go to school.
3. . . . she was not feeling well.
4. . . . they had finished the work.
5. . . . they had seen you at the meeting.
6. . . . she was coming to China soon.
7. . . . the weather was going to change.
8. . . . she was working hard.
9. . . . they had done it.

10. ... she was waiting for a bus.

II. 1. ... Mr. Brown was the winner.

2. ... he was sure that she was wrong.

3. ... he had run faster than Bob.

4. ... they had done it before.

5. ... he had swum very well.

6. ... she had a bad headache and a temperature.

7. ... they were sorry to hear she had not been well.

8. ... I didn't want anything else.

9. ... he had waited for an hour and then he had gone home.

10. ... she had already read half of the book he had given her.

III. 2. She said, "I am listening to the radio."

3. She said, "He told me about it."

4. He said, "She has been waiting for weeks."

5. He said, "I have been thinking about it."

6. She said, "He is strong enough to lift it."

8. Tom told me, "I have passed the test."

9. She told him, "I have never seen you before."

10. She told them, "I am helping my mother."

11. He told me, "I am going to go to England soon."

12. He told me, "They have already retired."

Lesson 134

I. 2. He told me she had just won a prize and she was very lucky.

3. She told me they were going to move into a new flat.

4. She told me her son had come back to see her from New

York.

5. He told me he was drinking coffee with his friends.
6. She told me the red book was not hers.
7. He told me his friend had just bought a Mercedes.
8. He told me he had just read about the accident in the newspaper.

II. 2. He said he was going to buy them an ice cream.
3. She said she wanted to buy some flowers for his mother.
4. She said she knew her umbrella was the same colour as his.
5. He said he was answering a telephone call from a friend.
6. He said he wanted her to buy some stamps for him.
7. He said his brother was working for her husband.
8. She said he looked ill and she was sure there was something wrong with him.

Lesson 135

I. 2. ... he would do it himself.
3. ... he could watch television.
4. ... she thought she could help me.
5. ... he might go with me/us.
6. ... he couldn't understand long English sentences.
7. ... he might be getting married soon.
8. ... she would meet my teacher.
9. ... I/we would have to stay at home.
10. ... they would often visit me/us.

II. 2. ... he would never sell his house.
3. ... she couldn't go out by herself at night.
4. ... he could buy something with the money.

5. ... she needed some sugar.
6. ... her friend might visit her.
7. ... there might be a lot of tourists in his city this year.
8. ... he would have to start school soon.
9. ... she was sure she would have a good time in England.
10. ... he couldn't find his school report anywhere.

III. 2. He said, "I may know your father."
3. My teacher said, "You will have to be more careful next time."
4. He said, "The telephone call may be for you."
5. She said, "I will sweep the floor and dust the furniture."
6. He said, "It may snow soon."
8. He told me, "I can't finish the job."
9. She told me, "I shall go and have a look."
10. He told me, "I am sorry I can't write to you."
11. Kate told me, "The train will leave at four fifty."
12. He told me, "I may retire next year."

Lesson 136

I. 1. He said she might get a better mark than him in the Maths test.
2. He told her he would have dinner with her one day soon.
3. She said the watch he liked might be very expensive.
4. She told him she would write to him every day.
5. He said he wouldn't play football with them because he couldn't play the game.
6. He said he was sorry he couldn't make up his mind.

7. He told her he would wait for her until ten o'clock.
8. She said she could get tickets for him and his parents.

II. 1. He said it might be the most sensational news of the year.
2. The woman said she would have to do all the housework that day.
3. He told me he couldn't make a dress, but he could make a cake.
4. She said she thought he would be there on time.
5. He said he was sure they could win the match.
6. He said he was afraid she might be angry.
7. The shop assistant told me I could buy the trousers for half the price.
8. She told me she could teach me English.

Lesson 137

I. 1. see
2. will be
3. will ... say, see
4. don't arrive, won't get
5. stays
6. will help
7. don't hurry, will be
8. falls, will hurt
9. will do
10. feels, will go
11. work, will get
12. passes, will leave

II. 2. If I go to New York, I'll go by air.
3. If I fly to New York, I'll arrive at Kennedy Airport.
4. If I arrive at Kennedy Airport, I'll go to Manhattan.
5. If I go to Manhattan, I'll go by bus.
6. If I go to Manhattan, I'll see the Empire State Building.
7. If I visit the Empire State Building, I'll go to the top.
8. If I go to the top, I'll take some photographs of New

York.

III. 2. If it's fine tomorrow, I'll have a swim.

3. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I'll go to the beach.

4. If you ask him, I'm sure he'll help you.

5. If you finish the test before me, please wait for me.

6. If you see him, please give him my best wishes.

7. If she doesn't speak more loudly, no one will hear her.

8. If I know the answer, I'll tell you.

9. If he passes the exam, he'll go to university.

10. If I have enough money, I'll buy a car.

Lesson 138

I. 2. If you have enough money, you can buy that bike.

3. If you speak German well, you can work in Germany.

4. If you have a good voice, you can be a singer.

5. If you win the prize, you will get ten thousand *yuan*.

6. If you finish your homework, you can go out to play.

7. If you are not feeling well, you can have a rest.

8. If you get good marks in the exams, you can go to a good university.

II. 2. If she doesn't sweep the floor, her mother will be angry.

3. If you come back late, you must tell me.

4. If you listen to me carefully, you will understand.

5. If I have time, I will learn another language.

6. If you speak English every day, you will speak English better.

7. If you drive too fast, a policeman will stop you.

8. If you are more careful, you will make fewer mistakes.

9. If he finishes his homework early, he will watch

television.

10. If you pay for these books, I will have them.

Lesson 139

I. 2. He wants to know when the tourists will arrive.

3. He wants to know why I/we must leave.

4. He wants to know who they are.

5. He wants to know how I/we will travel.

6. He wants to know where he can find the book.

7. He wants to know where my dresses are.

8. He wants to know when the next train will be here.

9. He wants to know why I am looking so tired.

10. He wants to know who that man behind Ann is.

11. He wants to know how my mother is.

12. He wants to know what she is studying.

13. He wants to know why the boy is crying.

14. He wants to know where I/we will go next weekend.

15. He wants to know who my/our new teacher is.

II. 2. He wants to know where I/we live.

3. He wants to know when my/our school day starts.

4. He wants to know why she wants the book.

5. He wants to know how they went there.

6. He wants to know who Tim looks like.

7. He wants to know when I/we had my/our party.

8. He wants to know where I/we keep the fruit.

9. He wants to know why she wants to see me.

10. He wants to know when I/we did the job.

11. He wants to know what I/we did yesterday.

12. He wants to know how I/we keep my/our house clean

and tidy.

13. He wants to know how she knows the answer.
14. He wants to know why I/we bought that book.
15. He wants to know why I want to be a doctor.

III. 2. He wants to know if we can all hear him.
3. He wants to know if he can open the windows.
4. He wants to know if I am/we are coming to his party.
5. He wants to know if I/we will go and see the doctor.
6. He wants to know if I/we want to go swimming.
7. He wants to know if anyone will help me/us.
8. He wants to know if I have made up my mind.
9. He wants to know if I/we enjoyed the film.
10. He wants to know if I/we can tell him the way to the station.
11. He wants to know if there are any mistakes in his paper.
12. He wants to know if he may ask me a question.
13. He wants to know if I will write to him soon.
14. He wants to know if I/we work for an engineering company.
15. He wants to know if I/we have ever been to Paris.

Lesson 140

I. 2. Tell me where your brother is.
3. Tell me what she's eating.
4. Tell me where you're going.
5. Tell me when we're going to have dinner.
6. Tell me if you're ready.
7. Tell me if there will be a meeting tomorrow.
8. Tell me if that big house is yours.

9. Tell me when they played football.
10. Tell me what you bought in that shop.
11. Tell me if you want a drink.
12. Tell me what the answer is.
13. Tell me if he can swim.
14. Tell me if you're coming with us.
15. Tell me how you lost your watch.
16. Tell me what you're talking about.
17. Tell me if the lesson starts at eight.
18. Tell me if I must do it.

II. 2. Do you know if the bus has arrived?
No, I don't know if the bus has arrived.
3. Do you know if he wants a cup of coffee?
No, I don't know if he wants a cup of coffee.
4. Do you know if he is all right?
No, I don't know if he is all right.
5. Do you know if Mount Qomolangma is the highest mountain in the world?
No, I don't know if Mount Qomolangma is the highest mountain in the world.
6. Do you know why she didn't tell me?
No, I don't know why she didn't tell you.
7. Do you know when they can start work?
No, I don't know when they can start work.
8. Do you know if he likes beef?
No, I don't know if he likes beef.
9. Do you know if she is going to England or France?
No, I don't know if she is going to England or France.
10. Do you know how he hurt himself?

No, I don't know how he hurt himself.

Lesson 141

I. 2. The blackboard is cleaned after every lesson.
3. The lights are turned on in the evening.
4. The dishes are washed every day.
5. The school is painted regularly.
6. The grass is cut very often.
7. Supper is cooked at six o'clock.
8. Meat is sold at the market every day.
9. A lot of wheat is grown in Canada.
10. A lot of coffee is grown in Brazil.
11. French is spoken in some parts of Canada.
12. Our office is cleaned every day.

II. 2. The desks and chairs were cleaned before the lesson.
3. He was invited to a party.
4. The children were met after school.
5. The children were taken to school by car.
6. His car was repaired yesterday.
7. The lights were turned off last night.
8. The dishes were washed yesterday.
9. The beds were made this morning.
10. Tom was badly hurt in the crash and he was taken to hospital.

III. 2. Houses are built very quickly here.
3. That window was broken last month.
4. The door was painted red.
5. He was seen in the park.
6. The thief was caught in the shop.

7. The furniture is dusted every day.
8. The money was found and given to the policeman.
9. Letters are delivered to every house every morning.
10. The vase was put on the top shelf.

Lesson 142

I. 3. is spoken 4. are watered 5. was written
6. were shut 7. was met 8. were invited
9. was repaired 10. was built 11. is won
12. were introduced 13. were seen 14. is written
15. is dusted, are washed

II. 2. Of course they do! It was aired yesterday.
3. Of course they do! She was invited to a party last weekend.
4. Of course they do! They were watered yesterday evening.
5. Of course they do! It was cleaned a week ago.
6. Of course they do! They were emptied this morning.
7. Of course they do! It was washed yesterday.
8. Of course they do! She was asked out to dinner last Saturday evening.

Lesson 143

I. 2. I don't need to clean the cooker. It has already been cleaned.
3. I don't need to clean the carpet. It has already been cleaned.
4. I don't need to wash the dishes. They have already been washed.
5. I don't need to dust the table. It has already been dusted.
6. I don't need to water the flowers. They have already been watered.

7. I don't need to make any coffee. It has already been made.
8. I don't need to type the letters. They have already been typed.
9. I don't need to put the newspapers on the shelf. They have already been put there/on the shelf.
10. I don't need to open the windows. They have already been opened.

II. 2. The job will be done soon.
3. Your shoes will be repaired tomorrow.
4. The highest building in the city will be built next year.
5. The children will be sent to school next week.
6. The wall will be painted green next week.
7. The refrigerator will be repaired next Monday.
8. Two new films will be shown in the city next month.
9. The pictures will be put up on the wall soon.
10. The party will be held in two days' time.

III. 2. Has anyone caught the thief yet?
No, he hasn't been caught yet, but he will be caught this week.
3. Has anyone emptied the litter bins yet?
No, they haven't been emptied yet, but they will be emptied tomorrow.
4. Has anyone repaired the telephone line yet?
No, it hasn't been repaired yet, but it will be repaired next week.
5. Has anyone watered the garden yet?
No, it hasn't been watered yet, but it will be watered this evening.
6. Has anyone told them the good news yet?

No, they haven't been told yet, but they will be told this evening.

Lesson 144

I. 2. No, not yet, but I/we will be served soon.
3. No, not yet, but it will be checked soon.
4. No, not yet, but they will be returned tomorrow.
5. No, not yet, but they will be put on the envelopes soon.
6. No, not yet, but I/we will be introduced to them soon.
7. No, not yet, but she will be invited to it soon.
8. No, not yet, but it will be repaired this afternoon.
9. No, not yet, but they will be posted in five minutes' time.
10. No, not yet, but it will be cleaned in a minute.

II. 2. No, they have only just been repaired.
3. No, they have only just been started.
4. No, it has only just been built.
5. No, they have only just been set up.
6. No, it has only just been opened.
7. No, it has only just been built.
8. No, they have only just been opened.
9. No, they have only just been put here.
10. No, it has only just been built.